



Early Journal Content on JSTOR, Free to Anyone in the World

This article is one of nearly 500,000 scholarly works digitized and made freely available to everyone in the world by JSTOR.

Known as the Early Journal Content, this set of works include research articles, news, letters, and other writings published in more than 200 of the oldest leading academic journals. The works date from the mid-seventeenth to the early twentieth centuries.

We encourage people to read and share the Early Journal Content openly and to tell others that this resource exists. People may post this content online or redistribute in any way for non-commercial purposes.

Read more about Early Journal Content at <http://about.jstor.org/participate-jstor/individuals/early-journal-content>.

JSTOR is a digital library of academic journals, books, and primary source objects. JSTOR helps people discover, use, and build upon a wide range of content through a powerful research and teaching platform, and preserves this content for future generations. JSTOR is part of ITHAKA, a not-for-profit organization that also includes Ithaka S+R and Portico. For more information about JSTOR, please contact support@jstor.org.

PUBLICATIONS
OF THE
MODERN LANGUAGE ASSOCIATION OF AMERICA,
1897.

VOL. XII, 1.

NEW SERIES, VOL. V, 1.

I.—KING PONTIUS AND THE FAIR SIDONE.

PREFACE.

Apology will scarcely be necessary for printing an inedited English version of the story of King Horn, and, while the present chivalresque dilution of *Horn et Rimel* adds practically nothing to the general history of the legend, *Pontius* has claims of its own to the attention of students of fifteenth century English. It was impossible for me to edit the French original; the reasonable limitations of publication in this Society's annual volume, forbade the reprinting of my transcript of Wynkyn de Worde's edition of 1511; my edition then assumes logically the modest proportions of an accurate reprint of the earliest and most interesting version of the English *Pontius*, that of the Oxford ms. Digby 185. Where emendation appeared absolutely necessary, I have used my transcripts of the French original, ms. Royal 15, e. vi of the British Museum, and Wynkyn de Worde's print. I must crave indulgence for the inadequate study of this popular

romance in its manifold versions offered in the introduction. Only the spare time of a summer in England, chiefly devoted to the mechanical work of transcription, was available for this purpose. The actual writing was of necessity done with only the scanty resources of my own books and those of a small library. Where practically nothing has been done, my notes may at least be of service to some more favored investigator. I could easily have trebled the amount of annotation by treating the portions of *Ponthus* which are derived directly from *Horn et Rimel*, but this is, I believe, properly the work of the future editor of the Old French poem. I have gathered the important or difficult proper names into an alphabetical index. The few words that the professional student of English might wish to have explained, or the lexicographer, recorded, I have thrown into a glossary at the end of the introduction.

The pleasant duty remains of thanking those who have helped me in the preparation of this edition. The officers and attendants of the British Museum ms. room, of the Cambridge University Library, and of the Bodleian Library, extended to me all possible courteous assistance. Mr. George Parker, of the last-named library, did me a peculiar favor in early bringing to my attention the Digby ms., unrecorded in the scanty bibliography of *Ponthus*. Dr. J. W. Bright of Johns Hopkins University has helped me materially in seeing the text through the press; Dr. W. H. Schofield contributed the entire section on the Scandinavian rímur; and Dr. J. D. Bruce of Bryn Mawr sent me many suggestions, utilized in the introduction and notes, from the proof sheets. To all these, my most cordial thanks. May it some time fall my chance to show them, in Ponthus' words, that "theȝ be noo curtesie doon to a good hert bot that it is yolden agane."

F. J. M., JR.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
INTRODUCTION, - - - - -	iv
THE FRENCH PONTIUS.	
Origin, date, relation to Horn et Rimel, - - -	iv
Manuscripts of the French Pontius, - - -	xviii
Early printed eds. and subsequent history of the romance, - - -	xxi
THE ENGLISH PONTIUS.	
The Digby ms. and Douce Fragments, - - -	xxiii
Language of the Digby ms., - - -	xxviii
Wynkyn de Worde's ed. of 1511, - - -	xxx
Relations of the two English versions, - - -	xxxiii
THE GERMAN PONTIUS, - - -	xli
THE PONTIUS-RÍMUR, - - -	xliv
LITERARY CONSIDERATIONS, - - -	xlvi
PLAN OF THE PRESENT EDITION, - - -	xlix
NOTES, - - -	li
NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES, - - -	lix
GLOSSARY, - - -	lxiv
THE DIGBY TEXT, - - -	1-150

INTRODUCTION.

THE FRENCH PONTIUS.

ORIGIN, DATE, RELATION TO HORN ET RIMEL.

Just as the story of Melusine was written to glorify the family of Lusignan so the romance of Pontius was written in honor of a member of the famous Tour Landry family of Anjou. Montaiglon, in the introduction to his edition of *Le Livre du Chevalier de La Tour Landry*¹ (Paris, 1854), has collected the little that is known of the Pontius de La Tour, for whom our romance was named. The famous knight Geoffroy de La Tour Landry left a son, Geoffroy, who died, leaving his widow in possession of the family estates. Her second husband, Charles, assumed the name of La Tour and thus became head of the family. Their second son was our Pontius.

In 1424, this Pontius gave tithes of his estates at Cornouaille, to the convent of St. John the Evangelist at Angers. The 21 Mar., 1431, he was a sponsor (*ôtege*) at the wedding of the Count of Montfort and Yolande, daughter of the queen of Sicily. He appears to have been present at the battle of Formigrey in 1450. It concerns us immediately only to know that his activity covered the second quarter of the fifteenth century, and that in this quarter-century, in any case, some years before 1445, the probable date of the Royal ms., the French *Pontius* was written.

Montaiglon (Intr., p. xxij f.) continues:—Il est aussi bien a croire que c'est lui qui a fait écrire par quelque clerc le roman

¹ Wright, in his ed. of *The Book of the Knight of La Tour-Landry* (E. E. T. S., No. 33, Intr., pp. viii ff.), summarizes Montaiglon's study, but fails to make the genealogy of Pontius of Tour-Landry sufficiently clear.

de chevalerie de Pontus, fils du roi de Galice, et de la belle Sidoine, fille du roi de Bretagne, souvent réimprimé ; c'était un moyen de populariser l'illustration de la famille et d'en faire reculer très loin l'ancienneté,—Bourdigné, comme on l'a vu, s'y est laissé prendre,—que de la mettre au milieu d'une action à la fois romanesque et à demi historique. Les La Tour Landry, ont voulu avoir leur roman, comme les Lusignan avoient Mélusine. Nous n'avoir pas à entrer dans le détail de ce très pauvre roman, qui se passe en Galice, en Bretagne et Angleterre, ni à suivre les péripéties des amours de Pontus et de Sidoine, traversées par les fourberies du traître Guennelet et enfin couronnées par une mariage. Ce qu'il nous importe de signaler c'est la certitude de l'origine de ce roman. Le héros de l'histoire porte le nom fort particulier¹ d'un des membres de la famille, et, parmi ses compagnons, se voit toujours au premier rang Landry de La Tour. Tous les noms propres sont de ce côté de la France ; ce sont : Geoffroy de Lusignan, le sire de Laval, d'Oucelles et de Sillié, Guillaume et Bernard de la Roche, le sire de Doé, Girard de Chateau Gaultier, Jean de Malevrier. Les quelques noms de localités françoises concourent aussi à la même preuve : c'est à Vannes que se fait le grand tournoi, et, quand l'armée se réunit, c'est à la tour d'Orbondelles, près de Tallemont ; or Talmont est un bourg de Vendée (Poitou) située à 13 kil. des Sables. Un passage donneroit peut-être la date exacte de la composition du Roman, c'est lorsque pour réunir une armée contre les Sarrasins, on écrit à la comtesse d'Anjou : car, dit le romancier, le comte étoit mort, et son fils n'avoit que dix ans.² Mais c'est trop long-temps m'arrêter à ce dire, qu'il étoit pourtant nécessaire de signaler.

Strangely enough, as M. Paul Meyer remarks (*Romania*, xv, p. 275), those who have treated the King Horn story

¹ The name was I fancy not excessively rare, though I recall at present only Pontus de Thiard, a somewhat obscure luminary of the Pleiade.

² Probably a mere pseudo-realistic touch of the romancer. The only Duke of Anjou who at all fits the case, Louis I, claimant of the throne of Naples, died 1384. His eldest son Louis II was ten years old in 1387. But our romance could hardly have been written so early. Unfortunately we are ignorant of the date of the historic Pontus' birth. A theory that the romance might have been written in 1387, when Pontus was a child, for his training,—within a few years too of the writing of the prose *Mélusine* and perhaps in rivalry with it,—would be alluring rather than plausible.

have failed to note Montaignon's very satisfactory theory of the origin of the romance of Ponthus. M. Montaignon in his turn was apparently ignorant of the fact, known since the third ed. of Warton's *Hist.* that *Ponthus* is merely a *rifacimento* of the story of King Horn, more definitely of the Anglo-Norman *Horn et Rimel*.¹ That is, the romancer spared himself the responsibility and labor of invention by accepting as a whole the plot of the forgotten *roman d'aventure*, reshaping it on the lines of a book of courtesy, amplifying and adding details from his own invention and knowledge of the early prose romances, localizing most of the scenes in the provinces most familiar to his patron, Ponthus of La Tour Landry, and introducing incidentally many names of the local nobility.

I have endeavored to show concisely in the following pages the measure in which *Ponthus* (P) departs from its original *Horn et Rimel* (HR) by omission and by amplification. For practical reasons the references to P are made to this edition of the English *Ponthus*, which represents faithfully the story of the French version, rather than to my transcript of the French ms. of the British Museum (Royal 15, E. vi).

THE DEATH OF KING TIBER (THIBOR) AND THE ESCAPE OF PONTIUS (P, pp. 1-9, HR, ll. 1-114).

HR starts *in medias res* with the finding of Horn and his fifteen (13 in P) fellows in a garden by the African Malbroin. Master Thomas has already told

Cum li bers Aaluf est uenuz a sa fin.

It is possible that the early pages of P, the sultan of Babylon² and his three sons, the taking of Corunna³ (Colloigne)

¹ Edited by Fr. Michel for the Bannantyne Club, Paris, 1845. I cite the convenient reprint of the mss. by Brede and Stengel, Marburg, 1885 (Aus. u. Abhand, No. VIII).

² A prominent figure in the prose romances, as in the later Charlemagne romances, *Paris and Vienne* Roxb. Libr., p. 72, etc. There is a M. E. romance with this title (E. E. T. S., No. 38).

³ For variant spellings see index of proper names. Wynkyn de Worde's print shows in the first chapter-heading and in the first chapter *Croyne* the usual English equivalent of Corunna.

by a strategem, etc., may preserve the outlines of this last poem of Thomas.¹ This could hardly be proved in any case, while it appears more likely that the romancer merely wished to give the three Saracen brothers a motive for their invasions, which in HR the five African brothers of the sultan of Persia, have nowhere expressed for them. The character of Sir Denis (p. 3, l. 25, Dampdenis), the priest, who hides the children and of Sir Patrick, the pretended Saracen, who saves them, are not in HR. In HR an *alchaie sur mer* advises the king Rodmund (the Brodas of P) to set the children adrift in a cranky ship, without sail or rudder: this is done in fact,—in P merely in appearance. The agreement of Sir Patrick and the Earl of Asturias (Destruie, pp. 6–8) to save the country by feigning the Saracen religion, thereby becoming Brodas' lieutenants, is not in HR.

Minor differences are that in P Pontius conceals his identity from the king, in HR Horn reveals it boldly, while the premonitory dream of the king that Pontius in a lion's form² slew him (p. 6) is peculiar to P.

PONTIUS IN BRITANNY.—HIS MEETING WITH SIDONE (P, pp. 9–18; HR, ll. 115–1301).

The two versions show only insignificant differences. Herlant, the seneschal of king Hunlaf of Brittany (P. Huguell, R. Haguell?), is the single name common to the two. P mentions and describes briefly the princess Sidone when her father is first mentioned (p. 9), HR reserves the princess Rigmel till the love plot begins to open (l. 405 ff.). The insistence upon Pontius' piety (p. 11) is as usual only in P. Horn chooses to have his fellow Haderof educated with him under Herlant

¹ Horn's statement, l. 278 f.:

*Mis peres ifud pris par sa ruiste fierte
Ki atendre ne uout ke uenist sa barne,*

points to a beginning like that of the English *King Horn*.

²See Mentz, E, *Die Träume in den Altfr, Karls- und Artus- epen*, Marburg, 1888; Ausg. u. Abhand, LXXIII, p. 53 ff., for a collection of similar lion dreams.

(l. 361 ff.). Pollides is educated separately by the Lord of Laval. In HR (ll. 588 ff.) Rigmel gives gift upon gift to Herlant, Sidone is content to give him a palfrey, reserving her gift of a cup (p. 17) till he has actually brought Ponthus; furthermore Rigmel (ll. 758 ff.) follows up the tardy Herlant with reminders from Herselote, her maid, that he is to bring Horn at once. The incident is absent from P. The action of Herlant in substituting Pollides for Ponthus (p. 13) is left without expressed motive in P, in HR he explains (l. 693 f.).

Qui merrai Haderof, par laparceiement
Quel semblant el li fra a cest assement.

Godswip, Rigmel's nurse, first recognizes Haderof in HR (l. 852 f.). Pollides in P declares himself promptly. Herselote, who has seen Horn at the feast, describes his beauty elaborately to Rigmel (ll. 950 ff.), Eloix (Ellious), Sidone's maid, uses a similar description as she sees from the window Ponthus coming. Sidone gives Ponthus a diamond ring at their first meeting (p. 17), Rigmel shows Horn this mark of favor only after his notable service in battle (l. 1790 ff.). These slight differences are only worth recording to show the freedom of the romancer's handling of his original. In a general way the descriptions of Ponthus' beauty, accomplishments and virtues are expanded in the manner of books of courtesy, while our author protests unnecessarily (p. 17) the innocence of the love of Ponthus and Sidone.

THE FIGHT WITH THE SARACEN MESSENGER AND THE DEFEAT OF THE INVADING SARACENS (P, pp. 18-32; HR, ll. 1302-1722).

Carodas, brother of the slayer of Ponthus father (in RH two kings, Eglof and Gudolf, brothers of Rodmund), sends a messenger¹ (in HR Marmorin) to defy king Huguell. Horn, having slain the challenger (l. 1541 ff.), presents the Saracen's head to Hunlaf as a trophy, Ponthus (p. 21) sends it back to

¹The insolent Saracen messenger is a typical figure in the Charlemagne romances. Examples are hardly necessary.

Carodas by the two Saracen squires with a message of defiance. Immediately after the single combat Horn is appointed constable of Brittany (l. 1547 f.), Pontius only after the general engagement (p. 37). Rigmel only hears of the duel after it is finished, then she gives Horn a pennon to bear in the battle (l. 1579 f.), Sidone gives Pontius "a kerchief to beſ on his spere" (p. 20) before the duel. Pontius rescues the king of Brittany, who is unhorsed (p. 27 f.), but Horn, only Herland the seneschal (l. 1691 ff.).

The considerable elaboration of the course of the battle in P, as compared with HR where Horn and Haderof are the only prominent figures, was due to the romancer's desire to use prominently as many names of his French nobles as possible (see especially p. 24 and pp. 28-30).

PONTIUS CONSTABLE (pp. 32-34). THE FIRST TREASON OF GUENELETE (pp. 34-39). THE YEARS JOUSTING IN THE FOREST OF BROCELIANDE (pp. 40-59). THE GREAT TOURNAMENT AT VANNES (pp. 59-61).

Except the election as constable, which HR uses earlier, this entire chapter rests upon the romancer's invention and borrowings, in part easily identified, from other romances.

In HR Horn chastises the rebellious count of Anjou for king Hunlaf and makes all the king's subjects and neighbors fear him (ll. 1737-1749). Rigmel praises him and gives him a ring (l. 1790 ff.). None of this in P. Only Guenelete's motive for slandering Pontius is borrowed from HR—that Pontius refuses him the horse, Liard,¹ Sidone's present. In HR Wikel asks for Horn's *blanc cheval*, the gift of Herland, which Horn had already given to Haderof (l. 1850 f.). This scene in HR occurs just before Wikel slanders Horn to the king. The writer of P uses it to introduce this first treason of Guenelete, his own invention.

¹ The common name of a grey horse. Used of Herlant's horse (HR, l. 1696), in *Richard Coer de Lion* (Webber), 2320, in *Ipomedon A* (Kölbing), 3892, 3911.

There are certain obvious borrowings in P. The *Fontaine des Merveilles* in the forest of Broceliande (Breselyn, p. 44) is the *Fontaine Perilleuse* of *Yvain* (Foerster, l. 380 ff.), but our author is more likely to have taken it from the prose *Tristan* (Löseth, *Le Roman en Prose de Tristan*, Paris, 1891; 82° fasc. de la bilb. de l'École de Hautes Études, p. 248). It is there Tristan, who, by pouring water of the well on the stone, arouses the knight of the tour. In P the incident is mere stage-setting.

The not uninteresting mummary for choosing the contestants by shooting at their shields (pp. 41-43) is probably borrowed, but I have been unable to trace the source. In the prose *Tristan* (Löseth, p. 321) the knight of the *Tour du pin rond* hangs his shield on a pine and jousts with all who will strike it, but this is scarcely parallel.

Again these detailed single combats and elaborate tournaments give the romancer the opportunity of bringing into prominence his chief minor characters, Landry de La Tour, Bernard de La Roche, Geoffrey de Lusignan,¹ etc.

GUENELETE'S SECOND TREASON. PONTIUS ACCUSED TO THE KING (P, pp. 63-69; HR, ll. 1818-2135).

Wikel's pretence of quarreling with Horn about the *blanc cheval* has been already used by P as the motive of Guenelete's first treason (p. 34). Envy is this time the motive.

Wikel in addition to charging Horn with Rigmel's dishonor,—the sole accusation in P,—makes him plot with her against the king (l. 1893 ff.).

The versions correspond very closely in Horn's words with the king and his refusal to swear (l. 1940 ff.), as in the entire section, but Horn sees the king once more after leaving Rigmel and reaffirms his innocence (l. 2071 ff.), and Rigmel exchanges rings with Horn (l. 2051 ff.), giving him a sapphire ring that will protect him from fire, water and

¹ This is the name of the famous hero of the Great Tooth, the sixth son of Mélusine. See the index of *Mélusine*, E. E. T. S., Ext. S. 68.

battle. In P Pontius receives a ring, which has no talismanic properties, only at his first meeting with Sidone (P, 17).

PONTIUS IN ENGLAND (P, pp. 70–96; HR, ll. 2136–3681).

Horn assumes the name of Gudmod (l. 2160) on arriving in Ireland (Westir), Pontius in England that of Le Surdit de Droite Voie,¹—that is, *the accused one* who sought in vain the *straight path* of vindication by combat.²

The incident of the boar (P, p. 70) is not in HR. There Guffer and Egfer, sons of king Gudreche of Ireland have an agreement that the first two foreign knights arriving shall enter the service of Guffer, the elder, the third, that of Egfer (l. 2206 ff.). Riding together they meet Gudmod (Horn), who represents himself as the son of a vavasour; both desire his service, but it is Egfer's turn.

Gudreche, the king of Ireland, knew Allof, Horn's father, and Horn, when a child; he immediately marks Gudmod's likeness to Horn. Lenbure and Sudbure, daughters of the king, are immediately attracted to Gudmod. Lenbure, the elder, sends him a golden cup from which she has drunk, bidding him drink the rest and keep the cup (l. 2399 ff.). Horn reproves her and refuses the gift. Lenbure, still insistent, receives no encouragement. P omits all this except the general statement that the king's daughters loved Surdit (Pontius) and goes on to the stone-casting (p. 72; HR, l. 2567 ff.).

Eglof, a vassal, outdid both the king's sons—in P, only Henry—in casting the stone. Implored by his master Egfer,

¹ Prince Philip of France, having relinquished his heirship to fight against the Great Turk, calls himself *Le Despurveu* (*Three Kings' Sons*, E. E. T. Soc., Extra S., No. 67, p. 9). Iolanthe, feeling the name to be inappropriate, calls him *Le Surnome* (p. 36). Later the king of Sicily rechristens him *Le Nounpareil* (p. 55). *Noms de guerre* are common enough in all romances, but they seldom have any especial signification.

²As explained in the Royal ms. *Quant le roy ouyst quil [Pontius] se nommoit ainsi. Si pensa que cestoit pour ce quil lui auoit mis sur quil amoit sa fille [Sidone]. Le seurnom, pour ce quil lui auoit refuse droicte voye, pour ce qui se vouloit combatre contre deux ou trois* (cf. p. 104, l. 18 of this text).

Gudmod without exertion equalled Eglof's boasted cast. Eglof casts a foot better. Again Gudmod equals his cast. Eglof, with a supreme effort, casts half a foot farther. Gudmod, conjured by his love,—the allusion is turned to his mother only in P,—outcasts him by seven feet (l. 2659 ff.). In all this P follows HR with the slightest changes.

The two brothers go with Gudmod to disport themselves (l. 2698 ff.) in Lenbure's chamber. A game of chess in which Gudmod beats Lenbure—omitted in P—is elaborately described in HR (ll. 2726–2772).

Lenbure takes her harp and sings half the lay—all she knows—which Baderof made to his sister Rigmel in Brittany. Gudmod finishes the lay with marvellous sweetness, so that Lenbure cries out :

Coe est Horn, cum ioe crei

(l. 2852),

and is with difficulty dissuaded. Wissman (*Anglia* iv, p. 394) has already pointed out that this incident is probably imitated from *Tristan*. In P, Surdit sings to Genever the lay which he himself made to Sidone—the princess recognizes it immediately. They all make Surdit repeat it to the king.

The whole episode of the war with the king of Iceland,—so in the Royal ms., in both English versions Ireland,—his capture by Ponthus, his marriage to the king's younger daughter by Ponthus' advice, is apparently original with the writer of P (pp. 76–82). P, on the other hand, entirely omits the single combat with Rollac, slayer of Horn's father,—though the long description in HR (ll. 3108–3210) may have yielded certain details for the fight with Carodas' messenger earlier (p. 20 f.),—and goes directly to the battle with Corbatan (Corboran) the sultan of Babylon's third son. In HR Hildebrant and Herebrant, brothers of the African invaders of England and Brittany, and of the *soudein de Perse, dan Gudbrant*, l. 3000, are the invading kings.

The battle in P (pp. 82–86) is little dependent upon HR. Hildebrant kills Guffer and is himself killed by Gudmod

(l. 3298 ff.); Herebrant (by mistake Hildebrant in both MSS. Harleian corrects to Herebrant on the margin) wounds mortally Egfer, Gudmod's master, but falls himself at Gudmod's hand (ll. 3359-3405). HR (l. 3497 ff.) dwells effectively upon the scene between Gudmod and his dying master.

In HR it is the king of Orkney (l. 3574 ff.) who tries to arrange the marriage between Gudmod and Lenburc, in P the king of Scots (p. 87). In HR Gudmond feigns to be betrothed to the daughter of a vavasour in Brittany (l. 3663 ff.), in P he offers only the general excuse of his low birth.

GUENELETE AND THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY.¹ OLIVER SEEKS PONTIUS IN ENGLAND (P, pp. 88-93; HR, ll. 3682-3917).

There is no change of scene to Brittany in HR. Only the barest details of Wikel's plot are told to Horn by Joceran, Herland's son, who appears as a palmer in the court and calls him by name. Modin (Modun), king of Fenenie, represents the Duke of Burgundy of P.

All the details of Guenelete's treachery, except the deposition of Herlant, such as Sidone's gaining time by pleading sickness² (p. 90), and Oliver's falling among thieves (p. 91), are original with P. HR offers only the slight differences that Joceran has wandered three years in search of Horn (l. 3702), and that Lenburc, hearing of Horn's betrothal, will become a nun and leave him heir to the kingdom of Westir (ll. 3875 ff.).

PONTIUS' RETURN TO BRITTANY. DEATH OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY. WEDDING OF SIDONE AND PONTIUS (P, pp. 93-106; HR, ll. 3918-4594).

¹ The son of the Duc of Bourgoyne is Paris' chief rival with Vienne (*Paris and Vienne*. Roxb. Libr., p. 57, 62, etc.); Vienne's father imprisons her because she will not marry the Duke (p. 62); is a character of *Three Kings' Sons* (see index); his brother Guy (mentioned P, p. 105, l. 33) bears the name of the hero of a *chanson de geste* (*Gui de Bourgogne*, ed. par Guesard et Michelant, Paris).

² Vienne, imprisoned, when her father attempts to force her into a marriage,—with her own lover disguised,—simulates a loathsome disease, by the unpleasant means specified on p. 85 of *Paris and Vienne*.

The chapter follows HR with few changes. In HR Horn first learns of the day and place of the wedding of king Modin from the palmer with whom he changes clothes (l. 3954 ff.). Horn's parable of the fisher to Modin and Wikel (l. 4046 ff.) is of course absent from P. The description of the custom of having thirteen poor men entertained at great feasts (p. 98) is not in HR. Horn merely pushes into the hall, having thrown the opposing porter under the bridge, with the press. He demands a drink of Rigmel (l. 4164 ff.) instead of waiting his turn. The pun on Horn (l. 4206 ff.) is necessarily absent from P. Rigmel knows Horn on the instant. Explanations then are made in the hall at the feast, not in the princess's chamber as in P (p. 99). She immediately offers to follow him in poverty, so the test questions of P (p. 99) are absent from the earlier version.

Horn tells Rigmel to persuade Modin to hold a tournament (l. 4323), in P it follows a wedding feast as a matter of course. Horn unhorses Modin in the tournament (l. 4479 ff.), then as Modin's people come to the rescue, blows his horn, summoning his concealed troops to capture Modin and take the town of Lions. In P the Duke of Burgundy, worsted by Ponthus, is precipitated into a pit by his unruly horse and killed (p. 102 f.). In HR Horn and Modin are reconciled (l. 4545 ff.), and Wikel pardoned for this treachery (l. 4565 ff.).

PONTIUS RECONQUERS GALICIA (P, pp. 106-119; HR, ll. 4595-4881).

There is a large loss of text in HR after l. 4594, so that the portion corresponding to the vow at the wedding feast (P, p. 108) and the invasion of Galicia, the finding of Sir Patrick and the Earl of Asturias at prayer in a chapel (p. 111), is missing. But at l. 4595, Hardre, formerly seneschal for king Allof, appears in the character of the Sir Patrick of P, deceiving the heathen king as to Horn's strength, and planning an ambush for the battle. Rodmund has dreamed that a wild boar gored his horse and wounded him mortally (HR, l. 4656 ff.), Brodas has dreamed that he became a wolf, and that a

greyhound, accompanied by a "brachet,"¹ pulled him down (P, p. 113).

The strategem by which the town is taken (P, 115) is not in HR. Horn delivers his friend Haderof from desperate straits, in killing Rodmund (l. 4782 f.) otherwise the battle in P follows HR in a general way, with greater elaboration as usual and provision for a larger number of characters.

PONTIUS RECOGNIZES HIS MOTHER (P, pp. 119-122; HR, ll. 4882-4967).

The scene of recognition so sympathetically described in HR as to lead Michel to the rash appreciation, *Si j'étois forcé de choisir entre cet épisode et celui de la reconnaissance d'Ulysse par Pénélope, je ne sais auquel je donnerois la préférence* (Intr., LXII), is somewhat amplified in P, but presented with equal delicacy of feeling. Slight changes in P are, first, the queen enters the banquet hall as one of the thirteen poor people to be fed in honor of God and his apostles (p. 119, cf. p. 98); second, the Earl of Asturias, her brother, recognizes the queen,—a character missing in HR, where Hardre first recognizes her. The scene (l. 4928 ff.) where Horn returning from the chase meets his mother disguised at the door, is only in HR.

GUENELETE'S FINAL TREASON² AND DEATH (P, pp. 122-140; HR, ll. 4968-5215).

Horn dreams that Wikel attempts to drown Rigmel (l. 4968 ff.). Pontius dreams that a bear devours Sidone³ (p. 122). All the details of Guenelete's treason differ from the simple account in HR (ll. 5040-5146). The king and his daughter, warned by Wothere, Wikel's brother, that Wikel intends to imprison them in his new castle and marry Rigmel,

¹ See Mentz, *Die Träume*, u. s. w., p. 61, but there are no close parallels.

² In Caxton's *Blanchardyn and Eglantyne* (E. E. T. S., Ext. S., No. 68, p. 172 ff.; p. 197 ff.) Subyon plays a part very similar to Guenelete's. Left in charge of Eglantyne, he corrupts the commons, tries to force her to marry him, and besieges her.

³ For bear dreams see Mentz, *Die Träume*, u. s. w., p. 56. Most like the present instance are those cited from *Berte aus grans piés*, l. 1678, and *Aye d'Avignon*, l. 2514.

defend the town, suffer hunger, and are forced to agree to a truce for fifteen days, and then to surrender, if Horn does not in the meantime return.

The elaborate description of Guenelete's forged letters, his corruption of the commons, Sidone's retreat to a tower, etc., is borrowed from Mordred's treachery in the *Morte d'Arthure*, usually appended to the prose *Lancelot*. The parallel is striking with the version represented by Füeterer's German *Lancelot* (Bibl. d. Litt. Vereins, No. 175, Tübingen, 1885, p. 348 f.). In this version Mordred, left in charge of the kingdom and the queen, wins over the people by great gifts, has a messenger bring a letter from Arthur, with word that he, lying at the point of death and all his people destroyed, makes Mordred king, and as a last request bids "Ginofer" marry Mordred. The queen doubts the letter, obtains four days' respite, in which time she shuts herself up in a tower, provisioned and garrisoned, to await rescue from Arthur and Lancelot. She upbraids Mordred for his ingratitude from a window as Sidone does Guenelete (p. 130 f.). Malory (Somner, p. 839) gives the same account with less detail.

Only in P (p. 133) Sidone dreams of her husband's coming.

The Earl of Richmond's journey to arrange the marriage of Genever and Pollides (P, p. 136 f.), and the details of the tournament (p. 138 ff.) are original with P.

PONTHUS' VISITS TO ENGLAND AND GALICIA (P, pp. 140-150; HR, ll. 5226-5250).

In the main P only amplifies tediously the score of lines in HR. Ponthus marries Genever to Pollides and reads him a homily (p. 145 ff.) on the duties of a prince, especially of one who has married above his station. Horn in Ireland has to provide for both princesses, Lenbure he marries to his former rival, Modin, Sudbure to Haderof, his companion, who, like Pollides, becomes heir to the kingdom. HR adds, Horn and Rigmel had a son Hadermod, who conquered Africa; Thomas could tell his story, but leaves it to his son Gilemot.

SUMMARY.

This tedious comparison shows :

(1) That P has used every essential element of the plot of HR, but has filled in the skeleton freely by invention, amplification, and occasional borrowings. I cannot find any clear instance where the French *Pontius* has borrowed verbally from HR, but its general freedom of treatment makes a supposition that another version of the French *Horn* than HR was used gratuitous.

(2) P has definitely localized the story in Galicia,—instead of the Suddene (England) of HR, in Brittany,—in this agreeing with HR,—and in England, instead of Westir (Ireland). The Charlemagne romances may have caused the shifting of the early scenes of the romance to Spain, geographical proximity may have drawn the Irish episode of HR to England. All the geography of P is quite accurate, no more recondite reference than the index of Bædeker's *Northern France* is necessary to identify nine-tenths of the localities represented by the minor characters of the poem. All important proper names, those difficult of identification, or unidentified are collected in an alphabetical list at the end of the introduction. At times the scribe of the Digby ms. has bungled these proper names sadly ; the necessary corrections have been made usually in the alphabetical list rather than in the notes.

(3) The only really important additions of the romancer to the plot of HR are : (1) Guenelete's first treason and the resulting year's jousting in the forest of Broceliande with its sequel, the great tournament at Vannes (pp. 40–61); and (2) the episode of the king of Iceland (Ireland) (pp. 76–82).

(4) The amplifications of the motives of HR, are either in the way of bringing out more definitely and elaborately the courtesy of the hero, or, in battles, etc., those imposed upon the romancer by the necessity of providing parts for a great number of minor characters.

(5) There are demonstrable borrowings from the prose *Tristan*, and *Lancelot*. The names show that the romancer knew in a general way the legends of Arthur and of Charlemagne. Guenelete is clearly only a double diminutive of Guenes, the arch-traitor, Geneŕ (Genever) is as clearly the name of Arthur's queen, king Hoël of Brittany may have suggested, not given, Huguell (a mere diminutive of the familiar Hugues). These parallels Mr. Ward (*Cat. of Romances*, vol. 1, p. 470) has already drawn. Beside these Carodas, son of the sultan of Babylon, gets his name from Carados of the Arthur legend (e. g. *The Prose Merlin*, E. E. T. S., vol. 36, p. 442, p. 594), while Fireague (Ferragu), a Saracen, who slays prince John of England, is apparently Ferragus, an insolent Saracen messenger familiar to the Charlemagne romances from the chronicle of Pseudo-Turpin to the English *Roland and Vernagu* (E. E. T. S., No. 39). It is probable that one more familiar than myself with the great mediaeval romances could supply many additional parallels, both in name and incident.

MSS. OF THE FRENCH PONTIUS.

I have examined only the three English MSS., of these the Cambridge MSS. only cursorily.

(1) Ms. Royal 15, E. VI, of the British Museum, which I cite constantly, from my transcript, as R, is a large folio in double columns, with many handsome miniatures. It was given to Margaret of Anjou, wife of Henry VI, presumably on the occasion of her marriage (1445), by the 1st Earl of Shrewsbury (died 1452). The description of this interesting volume of Romances in Ward's *Catalogue*, 1, p. 130, is so accessible that I pass it here. The romance of *Pontius* occupies ff. 207-226^b. Mr. Ward (p. 470) counts 47 chapters with rubrics, but no numbers—I count 48. There is, as usual, no title.

The first rubric begins :

Cy commence ung noble liure du Roy Pontus filz du Roy thibor de galice le quel Pontus fut sauue des mains des Sarrazins. Et de puis fist de beaulx faiz darmes comme vous pourres oyr cy a pres.

The romance begins :

Compter vous vueil vue noble hystoire Dout len pourroit assez de bien et d'exemple aprendre, etc.

Ends :

Le roy Pontus et la royne vesquirent asses longuement et regnerent au plaisir de leur pays. Et puis trespasèrent Et moult furent moult [*sic*] regretees de tout le peuple Mais ainsi est de la vie mondaine. Car si beau sy bon sy riche, ne sy fort, nest que en la fin Ne conuiege laisser ce siecle
Explicit le liure du Roy Pontus.

The Royal ms. represents an earlier stage of the romance than either of the Cambridge MSS., with its absolute monotony of sentence structure,—endless *si's* and *et's* at the beginning of sentences, etc., but it shows also a version slightly condensed. All the long lists of names of knights are promptly cut off with an *et moult d'autres*. In the closing chapters, corresponding to pp. 118–150 of the present text, R frequently condenses details more fully treated in all other versions, but never in a way to alter essentially the course of the story. This would render it inadvisable to make R the basis of an edition of the French *Ponthus*, in spite of its assured early date (between 1445 and 1452).

(2) ms. Hh, 3, 16 of the Cambridge University Library,—cited as H, fol. vellum, 82 leaves (originally 84),¹ written probably about the middle of the 15th cent. The ms. contained originally 88 leaves as follows, a single fol. (2 leaves) containing the rubrics of the chapters, ten gathers of four folios (8 leaves) each, a final gather of six leaves. Two leaves have been cut out, probably for miniatures they contained,—the second leaf of the third gather of eights, and the fifth leaf of

¹At the end in an old hand (17th cent.?),

Sum Jacobi Morranti & amicorum.

the sixth gather of eights. The leaves are not numbered. The ms. in its present condition has 45 chapters with rubrics; it probably had at least two more. The chapter divisions are in the main those of R, but the chapter headings are quite different in form, occasional differences from the text of R appear to be revisions in the interest of varying the monotonous style of the original. H has always the full reading where R. condenses. It would undoubtedly, its two *lacunae* filled from R, be the best of the English MSS. to print.

3) ms. Ff., 3, 31 of the Cambridge University Library,—cited as F. Fol. paper, 15th cent. (probably late), ff. 33. This ms. is only remarkable for its geometrical capitals, and for a very dull prologue in octosyllabic couplets which M. Paul Meyer has printed with a brief description of the volume in *Romania*, xv, p. 275 ff. It is more minutely divided into chapters than the other MSS.,¹ in place of the usual chapter headings each capital at the head of the chapter contains a motto or verse bearing upon the subject of the chapter (Meyer, p. 276). The language is considerably revised and modernized.²

I find two MSS. registered for the Bibliothèque Nationale at Paris (see *Bibl. Imper. Man. Fran. Ancien Fonds*, Paris, 1868, Tom. I).

No. 1486, vellum, 14th Cent. (The date is, of course, impossible, but it should, at least, be an early MS. to get such a rating.) No. 1487, paper, dated 1462. I have no description of these MSS.

A romance so popular as the French *Ponthus* was must exist in many MS. copies. I have lacked the opportunity of searching further the catalogues of the great libraries.

¹ E. g. there are 47 divisions in the portion of text corresponding to the first 17 chapters of R.

² At the end of the MSS. are the following signatures of former owners,
John Dalton /1619/
William Townley of the parish of S.
Giles's in the Fields.

EARLY PRINTED EDITIONS.

Seven editions of the French romance within as many decades indicate the popularity of the book. Of these I have seen only the third, the others I cite summarily from Brunet, *Manuel du Libraire* (Paris, 1863), to which I refer the reader for exact bibliographical indications.

(1) Fol. 69 ff. without name, place or date, but published at Geneva, *circa* 1478.

(2) Fol. Lyon Guillaume Le Roy, *circa* 1480.

(3) Fol. Lyon Caspar Ortuin, *circa* 1500.

This is No. 177 of the Douce Coll. in the Bodleian Library.

The first (a), fifth (e), and tenth (i) gathers are fours (8 leaves), all the others, including the eleventh and last (l), are threes. There are then 72 leaves in all (Brunet reports 71 because the final leaf is blank). Ai (front) contains only the brief title, PONTIUS ET LA BELLE SIDOYNE. Ai (back) contains the first text,

¶ Cy commence une excellent histoire le quelle fait moult a noter/du tres-
uaillant roy pontius filz du roy de galice et de la belle sidoyne/fille du roy
de bretagne.

A large woodcut of a mounted knight with a hawk, and a maiden offering a carnation fills the rest of the page, and the romance proper begins on Aii (front),

Conter vous vueil, etc.

There are in the text thirty-six rude but occasionally spirited woodcuts. The text ends on the back of the unlettered leaf of fol. l. ii (leaf 71, back),

Puis finerent leur vie a grant regret de leurs pais.
Mais ainsi et [*sic*] il de la vie mondaine qui
nest si beau ne si riche ne si bon a qui au fort
ne conuienne laisser cest siecle et auoir fin.

Cy finist le tresexcellent romant du noble et
cheualeureux roy Pontius et de la tresbelle Si-
doyne fille du roy de bretagne imprime par
maistre caspar ortuin a lyon :

The final leaf is blank.

This version agrees very exactly in all H's grosser variants from R. In its chapter divisions, and in the form of the chapter headings it represents closely the original of Wynkyn de Worde's edition. We shall return to this point in the discussion of that version.

4) Quarto, double cols. Paris, Jean Trepperel, after 1500.

5) Quarto, 58 ff. Paris, Michel Le Noir, *circa* 1520.

5^a) " " " Alain Lotrian, without date, reported from the Royal Library at Stuttgart. Possibly the same impression as 5.

6) Quarto. Paris, Nic. Crestien, *circa* 1550.

7) Quarto. Paris, Jean Bonfons.

These are all printed in the so-called Gothic character.

The remaining history of Ponthus in France may be told in a word. It is amusing, at least, to find that Jehan de Bourdigné, the Chronicler of Anjou and of Maine, accepted our romance as good history. In his *Chroniques d'Anjou et du Maine*, first printed in 1529,—I cite the edition printed at Angers, 1842,—Bourdigné gravely describes the descent of Karados upon the coast of Brittany (Cap. XVI, p. 74 ff.) and all the course of the battle precisely, in outline, as it is described in chapters IX to XI of our text. The names of the participants, even the list of slain, are the same. After the battle (p. 80) Ponthus jousting in the forest of "Brecilian" is rather mentioned than described. After the jousts Ponthus' expedition to reconquer Galicia is mentioned, with lists of the French champions and of the slain in the final battle quite as in the romance. Finally the chronicler states that these annals are, *extraictes de plusieurs cronicques, hystoires et livres anciens*. Pity that no bearer of the then extinct name of Tour Landry could see his family romance accepted as good history.

The condition of public taste in France in the 17th century did not, as in Germany, tolerate the survival of *Ponthus* as a *Volks-buch*, and the French history of "Ponthus" closes,¹ or

¹ I should confess that a reference in Büsching and Von der Hagen's *Buch der Liebe*, S., XLV, states that the French Ponthus is treated in T. II, p. 180

possibly reopens, with the careful abstract presented in *Mélanges Tirées d'une grande Bibliothèque*, Tom. x, pp. 1-62. This abstract is based upon one of the editions in 4to, probably that of Jean Trepperel, about 1500. On p. 61 the author writes that Pontius and Sidoine

eurent deux filz, don't l'ainé porta avec gloire la premiere de ces deux couronnes [Galice] & le second, nommé Conan Meriadec, est la tige des Rois & Ducs de Bretagne.

I did not happen upon this bit of imaginary genealogy in "Bourdigné," and there is nothing of the sort in any version of *Pontius* that I have examined.

THE ENGLISH PONTIUS.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE DIGBY MS. AND DOUCE FRAGMENT.

The earliest form of the English *Pontius* is that of MS. Digby 185 of the Bodleian Library. The volume is a folio of 203 leaves handsomely written on thin vellum. The contents of the MS. are:—

1) Fol. 1-79. The prose chronicle usually called *The Brute of England*, with the prologue, ending with the capture of Rouen in the year 1418.

2) Fol. 80-144^b. Thomas Hoccleve's poem, *De Regimine Principum*. At the place where the miniature portrait of Chaucer should stand there is an elaborate s-shaped flourish in the margin with the side note *Chaucer's Ymago* (I neglected to note the exact form of the second word). This shows that the poem was copied from a MS. that contained the miniature.

and 250, of the *Biblioth. des Romans*. Having searched everything that could possibly be cited as a T. II in that distracting collection, I came forth from its mazes empty handed. Some one who knows the way may yet find it. It probably signifies nothing that the index vol. does not contain the name of Pontius.

3) Fol. 145–156. Hoccleve's story of the emperor Gerelaus and his wife (published, E. E. T. S., Ext. S. 61, p. 140 ff.). The prose exposition or moralization of the story follows on fol. 156–157.

4) Fol. 157^b–164. Hoccleve's story of Jonathas and his paramour (E. E. T. S., Ext. S. 61, p. 215 ff.). The prologue is lacking. The tale proper begins,

Sum tyme an Emperour' prudent and wise
Reigned in Rome.

The prose exposition follows on 164^b and 165.

5) Fol. 166–203. *Ponthus*.

The facsimile (exact size) of Fol. 166^{ro} will give a sufficient specimen of the fine and legible handwriting of the scribe, while affording an excellent example of the heraldic illumination of initial capitals.

These heraldic illuminations make it possible to locate the ms. and approximately to date it.

On page 1 of the ms. at the head of the *Brute* is this coat of arms: Quarterly, 1 and 4, Argent, a chevron azure, with a label of three points ermine;¹ 2 and 3, gules, a griffin segreant or;² crest, a friar's head, proper, hooded argent.³ The crest and arms quartered 1 and 4, indicating the family descent, were borne by a Sir George Hopton of Swillington, who was knighted by Henry VII at the battle of Stoke beside Newark, June 9, 1487 (W. C. Metcalf, *A Book of Knights*, 1885, p. 14). The Hoptons were descended from an illegitimate son of Robert de Swillington, one Thomas Hopton who died in 1430 (Joseph Foster, *Yorkshire Pedigrees*, Vol. II), and they inherited the manor of Swillington near Leeds, Yorkshire (*Loidis and Elmete*, p. 232. T. D. Whitaker, Leeds, 1816). The

¹ These arms are attributed to the Swillington family in the Catalogue of Digby MSS. erroneously,—Swillington arms in Burke's *General Armoury* are, arg. a chevron az, and gules, a griffin segreant or (the Leicestershire family).

² Catalogue, ["Rivers or Swinlington?"]

³ Catalogue, "The head of a savage."

arms (gules, a griffin segreant or) quartered with the Hopton arms are given by Burke as those of the Swillingtons of Leicestershire, presumably related to the Yorkshire Swillingtons. The Digby MS. was then written for a head of the Hopton family of Swillington, not improbably for Sir William Hopton,¹ Treasurer for Edward IV (*circa* 1465).

The initial capital of Hoccleve's *De Regimine*, Fol. 80, contains the arms of Hopton described above, impaling quarterly, 1 and 4, Argent a bendlet sable, thereon three mullets argent; 2 and 3, gules fretty argent² (Beauchamp, *Cat. of Digby MSS.*). They are the arms of a daughter of the Hopton family impaled with those of her husband, probably a Beauchamp.

In an initial, Fol. 157^b, ten small coats of arms are introduced. The curious will find them described in the *Catalogue of Digby MSS.*

The initial letter of *Ponthus*, Fol. 166, see facsimile, contains the quartered arms of Hopton and Swillington, impaling those already described under Fol. 80. This indicates that the husband had assumed the arms of his wife, probably as heir to the titles of Hopton and Swillington. Thus the facsimile shows all the arms here described.

I have gone into this tedious matter of the arms, on the chance that some enthusiast in genealogy may be able to determine the marriage indicated by the second and third shields, and thus date the MS. My own cursory study of the matter was quite fruitless. It is of chief importance only for us to know that the MS. was written for a Yorkshire family residing near Leeds. This will prepare us for the language

¹ He would have been in his prime about the middle of the century, the probable time of writing of the MS., and of an age to have the married daughter whose arms are contained in the MS.

But this whole matter of the Hopton genealogy appears to be vague and is certainly incomplete.

² I could not identify these impaled arms. I fancy that Beauchamp is merely offered as a suggestion in the catalogue. Foster's *Pedigrees* and the county histories show no marriage in the Hopton family corresponding to this impalement. But all the genealogies are sadly incomplete.

of the text. It is also an admissible theory, and a pleasant, to feel that the book is a sort of a family book. A father, who must have played some small part in the history of his day, chose the prose chronicle of England; his daughter chose, perhaps for the education of her children, Hoccleve's *De Regimine Principum*; her husband, with a feeling for something less ponderous than Hoccleve, and yet sufficiently edifying, chose the new and fashionable romance of *Ponthus*. It wasn't a bad sort of book to have about a house.

DATE OF THE DIGBY MS.

On palaeographical grounds we are safe in dating the Digby MS. after the first quarter of the fifteenth century. It falls then within a period when palaeographical data are peculiarly uncertain. The Rev. W. D. Macray, of the Bodleian Library, who kindly gave me his opinion in the matter, regarded a date about the middle of the century as the latest possible for the writing of the MS. The difficulty of determining narrowly by the language the date of a text partly changed from its original dialect is considerable, but there is I think nothing in the language of *Ponthus* that is incompatible with a date of about 1450. A date much earlier I think improbable.

The MS. is written solidly, without paragraph divisions; chapter divisions are marked only by illuminated capitals; even punctuation, except for an occasional ¶ or || is lacking. The short, downright stroke of the rubricator—see the facsimile—is used somewhat capriciously, usually in giving prominence to capitals, or initials, but often enough within the word (e. g., l. 18 of the facsimile *tHe cristen*; l. 19, *Doos anD moste*—the capitals represent small letters rubricated).

Catchwords occur at the end of every gather of 8 leaves, enclosed in rough pen-drawings.

Fol. 173^b, lower margin. On an oakleaf folded back the catchwords, *have a bettre*.

Fol. 181^b, lower margin. On the lower part of a knight's head and shoulders in armor, the catchword *Ponthus*.

Fol. 189^b, lower margin. Across the side of a large fish, the catchwords, *And Pollides*.

Fol. 197^b, lower margin. In a scroll the catchwords, *you in this case*.

The matter of contractions and terminal flourishes is treated in the section on the plan of my edition of the Digby ms. Finally the Digby ms., though itself perfect, appears to have been copied from a ms. of *Ponthus* that lacked a leaf (p. 57, note).

THE DOUCE FRAGMENT.

ms. Douce 384, of the Bodleian Library, is a miscellaneous collection. Its first two leaves are a folio (the leaves non-consecutive) from a Fol. paper ms. of *Ponthus*. The text of these two leaves is printed in full at the foot of the corresponding pages of text in this edition, pp. 33-35 and 42-45. The gap between the two leaves corresponds in bulk to four leaves of the same content. The Douce fragment was probably then the second Fol. of a gather of four, possibly the first of a gather of three.

The text is that of the Digby ms. with the usual unimportant variants.¹ A chapter division (p. 34), corresponding to Cap. XIII of D, shows that, like D, it lacked chapter headings. The catalogue dates it merely 15th cent. It must I think be set towards the last quarter.

¹ The fly-leaf of the ms. contains the following note in Douce's handwriting: "This is a fragment of the Romance of 'Ponthus of Galyce,' printed by Wynkyn de Worde, 1511, 4^{to}. The language of this fragment differs materially from that in the printed copy. No perfect ms. of this romance in English seems to be known." Douce also entered on the margin of the fragment references to the corresponding signatures of W, and occasionally variants from that text.

LANGUAGE OF THE DIGBY MS.

Though written at a period rather late for marked dialect in Yorkshire, the Digby ms. shows every where the traces of its Northern scribe.

If we apply the time honored test of the inflection of the Pres. Indic. of the verb we shall find that beside the regular first persons singular, and plurals with no ending or only a final e, surely unpronounced, we have a fair number of specifically Northern forms.

First persons singular in -s only occur in verbs separated from a pronominal subject by another verb.

I loue and trustes, 68, 14. *I swer'* . . . and has sworne, 99, 28.

I haue commaunded and commaundes, 123, 23. *And here I leve of the kyng of Bretan and retournes*, etc., 124, 3.

Second person singular in -s: *havis*, 20, 30; *has*, 130, 32; 134, 28; *makes*, 130, 32; *says*, 97, 27; *thinkes*, 22, 18; *yeldes*, 130, 35.

Plurals in -s: *drives*, 68, 22; (people) *dwellys*, 26, 30; *has*, 87, 26; 94, 23; 95, 12; 117, 9; 134, 16; *laboures*, 26, 31; *losys*, 97, 15; *travells*, 26, 31; *was*, 129, 31; *ye loue God and dredys hym*, 62, 31.

Imperatives in -es: *calles*, 38, 13; *comes*, 25, 22; *meruelles*, 83, 16; *sendes*, 23, 22; 113, 2.

Participles in -nd: *dredand*, 5, 32.

The verbal noun *tythandes*, 63, 5.

Beside these northern forms are the midland plurals: *semen*, 4, 17; *ben*, 5, 14; 23, 19; *sayn*, 6, 31; *sayne*, 13, 18 and 21; *drawen*, 76, 15.

Singulars in -st and -th: 2nd person, *feylest*, 4, 21; 3rd person, *baketh*, *gryndyth*, 6, 32; *lieth*, 5, 15; 25, 22; *longeth*, 23, 4; *semeth*, 23, 9; 119, 12; and the imperative in -th: *goth*, 21, 32.

It is perilous to commit oneself to any statement of dialectal usage in the fifteenth century, while Prof. Wright's great dictionary is actually publishing. Certain words, how-

ever, in our text are clearly Northern: *As*, *bustus*, 73, 10; *boustously*, 49, 3; *gude*, 63, 26; *vngudely*, 128, 16; *gudelenes*, 143, 19; *gar* (cause), 77, 33; *luke*, etc., 119, 13, 29, 31; *reiosed*, 98, 32; *reiose*, 132, 7; *trast*, 107, 18; *traysted*, 89, 9; *sall*, 87, 15; 134, 29; *suld*, 66, 29.

The use of *to* in the sense of *till*, 43, 19; 118, 33; 124, 2, and of *unto*, 38, 10; 39, 16, is Northern; likewise the great preponderance of *and* over *if* as the conditional conjunction. The invariable *awn* for the intensive pronoun must be regarded as a Northernism in a text of this date.

Stuffe in the sense of *provision*, frequent in this text, I believe to be a Northernism, though it occurs in W, and I have noted it in Malory (Somner, 839, 19). *Lugge*, 2, 24; *luges*, 27, 9, for *lodge*, is probably dialectal. It is barely possible that *there*, 15, 35 (note), is an isolated instance of the Northern demonstrative.

It may be well to note one or two phonetic matters, possibly dialectal.

An intervocalic *s*, but pretty certainly final in pronunciation, is frequently doubled, indicating the voiceless pronunciation, *pleasse*, 16, 27; 31, 33; 35, 5; 56, 5, etc. The single *s* is usual when the word is dissyllabic; e. g., *itt pleases me*, *if it pleasse my fadre*, 79, 32. Similarly, *rysse*, 139, 23, and *rosse*, 39, 19; 45, 25; 117, 22; 139, 21, etc.

Similar is the representation of a *v* sound by *f* in *gyf*, 2, 1; 11, 29; 103, 20; *gyfes*, 63, 1; *gafe*, 8, 8; these besides forms like *yevys* and *yeave*; so *relefe*, vb., 8, 20. The change of *b* to *p* in *warderop*, 14, 1; 67, 23, etc., was possibly more general. Precisely the reverse of this is the constant representation of *life* by *live*, *lyue*, etc.

Certain spellings appear to indicate that the *a* vowel was beginning to approximate its present front pronunciation: e. g., *sale*, 5, 26; *saled*, 5, 27 for *sail*; *prase*, 94, 7 and *prased*, 18, 2, beside *praysed*, 18, 5. *Wate*, 21, 15, and the verb, 65, 6. *Wale* (wail), 37, 15. *Captanes*, 111, 1. *Ordaned*, 111, 4; 112, 21; 123, 17, etc. *Agane*, 111, 7; 123, 16, etc., very

frequent. This fronting of the *a* is usually set much later. There is evidence in the present text for such a pronunciation which should at least be considered.

The dentals differ somewhat from standard English usage. *Hunderyth* regularly used for *hundred* is probably Northern. *Smoth*, 21, 11 for *smote* occurs but once. *Garthyn*, 3, 23 and *bothome*, 5, 26, 33 perhaps hardly call for mention.

In general apart from the singular of the verb the whole text has the look of London English of its time. The Douce fragment shows no Northern peculiarities. It would be difficult to disprove the thesis that the text might have been composed by a Northerner who knew standard English well and only occasionally lapsed into dialect, but it is far simpler to suppose that the translation was made in standard English of the time and slightly Northernized by the scribe, who prepared the present copy for the Hopton family of Yorkshire.

WYNKYN DE WORDE'S EDITION OF 1511.

The only known copy of this quarto is in the Bodleian Library.¹ Since the signatures misrepresent the make up of the book it may be well to give the matter a moment's attention. The book originally contained 100 leaves of which the

¹ In the Douce Coll. I transcribe one or two of Douce's notes from the fly leaf. Douce notes first, his ms. fragment and French edition (Ortuin's). Then continues,

"This romance is placed among the anonymous writers in Du Verdier's *Bibliothèque Française*."

"See it in *Bibl. Reg.* 15 E., vi, 6."

An instance of Douce's wide reading in obscure fields is the following:

"'From Pontus came Sidon, who by the exceeding sweetness of her voice first found out the hymns of odes, & praises and Posidon or Neptune.' See Cumberland's *Sanchoniatho*, p. 33. It is a whimsical coincidence of names at least."

"This romance is an enlarged version of *King Horn*, see Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, i, 46, new edition."

"Concerning *King Ponthus* see Bourdigné, *Chronique d'Anjou*, xxxv, &c."

first two are missing. It is made up of alternate 8s and 4s (leaves) with the single exception that the last two signatures P and Q are both eights.

8s regularly numbered i-iiij + 4 unnumbered leaves, are,

a (i and ij lacking), c, e, g, j, l, n, p, q.

4s numbered i-iiij + a single unnumbered leaf, are,

b, h, k, o.

4s numbered i-iiij, with no unnumbered leaf, are,

d, f, m.

Although a, i and ii are missing, the actual loss of text is but a single page,—exactly Cap. I of the present edition. We may safely assume then that the front of a, i contained only a brief title, that the back was blank, a large woodcut must have filled the front of b, i, leaving space, probably, only for the first rather long chapter heading (see the first rubric of R). The romance proper must have begun low on a, ij (front) or at the top of a, ij (back). Since a large portion of W is used to fill a gap in D (pp. 57-60), there printed line for line and letter for letter,¹ it will not be necessary to give specimens of the text here, beyond the beginning and ending. On a, iij (front) the text begins :

**¶ How Broadas sone to the Soudan toke
Croyne and slewe the kynge Tyber.**

SO befell it as fortune it wolde one of the thre
sones came as þ wynde brought his navy by
grete tourment that he passed besyde Croyne in galy
ce and there he came up.

The romance ends q [iiij] front.

¹Through my failure to give the printer sufficiently explicit directions the right hand margins are ragged and unsightly. Of course the "justification" was accurate in the original print. Otherwise the reprint represents as well as anything short of *facsimile* can, the typographical form of W.

But

thus it is of the worldly lyfe for there is none
so fayre nor so ryche so stronge nor soo goodly but at the laste
he must nedes leue this worlde.

Deo gratias.

q [iiij] back,

¶ Here endeth the noble hystory of the moost excellent
and myghty prynce & hygh renowned knyght kynge
Ponthus of Galyce & of lytell Brytayne. Enprynted
at London in Fletestrete at the sygne of the sonne by
Wynkyn de Worde. In the yere of our lorde god.
M.CCCC.XI.

Below this is the printer's mark,—a slight variation of No. 5 in E. Gordon Duff's *Handlist*, and a scroll bearing the name of Wynkyn de Worde.

The book is divided (counting the missing leaves as the first chapter) into sixty unnumbered chapters with headings. There are fifty-four woodcuts of very crude and feeble execution.

Mr. Nicholson of the Bodleian Library kindly wrote to me of a signature of four leaves (d, i and ij) of an unknown edition by Wynkyn de Worde, in his custody, and had the fragment copied for me. The transcript corresponds page for page with signature d of the edition of 1511. Slight differences in the justification of the lines, a variant spelling or two, the difference in designating the signatures (the fragment, d, i and ij + 2, unsigned; 1511, d, i—iiij, none unsigned), prove resetting.

In Lowndes' *Manual*, an edition of 1548 is noted. Repeated inquiries at the English libraries and at the great London booksellers have brought me no information of this volume or of its whereabouts. W. C. Hazlitt, *Notes and Collections*, says characteristically, "I have not seen the book, but is likely that for 1548 we should read 1648."

The printed edition shows nothing of unusual interest linguistically. A few rare words are cited in my notes. The discussion of the relation of W to its French source and to R, falls to the next section.

THE RELATIONS OF THE TWO ENGLISH VERSIONS.

The problem of the relations of D and R offers unusual difficulties, which a statement of the general results of the comparison of the two texts will set before the reader. W is throughout a close and even slavish translation of its French original. Pp. 1-61 of D follow W so loosely that they might almost be regarded as an independent translation. D is in general shorter, condensing the narrative by cutting out superfluous descriptive details. Verbal correspondences of any length are rare in this portion. D, pp. 62-113, l. 6, agrees more closely with W. The versions are still fairly distinct, but frequent verbal agreement of long sentences makes it clear that one version is in some fashion a revision of the other. D, pp. 113, l. 7-150, is to all intents identical with the corresponding portion of W. The verbal agreement is unusually close for two prose documents of this period. Roughly speaking, then, the first two-fifths of D is a loose paraphrase of its French original, and only remotely connected with W; the second two-fifths is a close paraphrase, and closely connected with W; the final fifth is a close translation and virtually identical with W.

Before attempting an explanation of these phenomena it may be well to show by a representative example from the first part the relations of the two English versions to each other, and to the French text R. I have chosen Pontius' fight with the Saracen messenger.

D (p. 21).

And Pontius withdrew hym a
litle, and putt his sper' in the reste;
and come with a goode will & smote
hym betweyn his sheld and his hel-

W (C. iij^{vo}. ff.).

& he afraced hym a lytell & toke
his spere & came to hym a grete pace
and smote hym bytwene y^e shelde
and the helme that he perced the

R (Fol. 210, Col. 1).

Il se eslogne ung pou et coucha sa lance et vient grant aleure contre lui
et le fiert entre lescu et le heaulme tant qui lui perca sa manche et ses

mett, that he brake his shuldre. And the

Saresyn smote Ponthus so myghtely that he brake his sper'. And when the kyng and the people sawe the iustyng, thei thonked Gode and said that Ponthus had wele iusted. Then Ponthus went forthre and drewe oute his swerd, and come to the Saresyn and gave hym suche a stroke aboute the vyser' of his helme that men myght se his vysage all open. Then hade the

Cristen ioye, and hope in Gode. The Saresyn drewe oute his swerd, whiche was a full grete blade of stele, and smoth Ponthus therwith so grete a stroke that he made his hede to shake and fire to smyte out of his eeyn: so he was sore astoned of that stroke, and sore was the feght between theym. Bot at all tymes Ponthus hade the better and lay in wate to smyte hym in the visage that

mayle and the doublet/& put the Iren & the tree bytwene y^e necke & the shoulders/& the tree brake well a two fote from the heed whiche greued hym moche/& the paynym smote Ponthus in the shelde & brake his spere in his breste. And whan the kyng & other sawe these Iustes/ they thanked god & sayd that Ponthus had lusted ryght fayre & prayed that god sholde helpe hym. Ponthus passed forth & made his cours & sette his hande on his swerde/& came towarde the paynym & gaue hym soo grete a stroke that he kytte a two halfe his ventayle & vnmaylled it so that y^e vyser bename hym the syght & the paynym rent it of so boystously y^t his vysage was all dyscouered/& than had the crysten men grete Ioy & grete hope/& the paynym drewe his swerde of stele & smote Ponthus so that he made all his heed to shake & his eye to sparkle in his heed/so he felte hym astonyed of the grete stroke/& smote the hors w^t his spores & came agayne & smote him a grete stroke. So was y^e batayle bytwene them stronge & longe enduryng/& all wayes Ponthus wayted to smyte the paynym in

estoffes et lui mist le fer et le fust entre le col et les espaules, et fu rompue sa lance a deux piedz du fust, qui moult greua le payen. A pres le payen ferist pontus en lescu et brisa sa lance en pieces. Quant le roy et les autres virent ceste iouste, si mercierent dieu et disoient que bel auoit iouste pontus et que dieu lui aideroit. pontus passa oultre et parfait son poindre et met sa main a lespee et vient vers le payen et lui donne si grant coup qui lui abat et trenche la moitie de la bauaille tellement que sa visaigiere lui tollu la veue, tant que le payen la print et erracha tant quil eust tout la (?) visaige a descouuert, dont eurent grant Ioye le *Cristiens* et grant esperance en pontus quil gagneroit. A dont le payen trait le branc dacier et ferist pontus si grant coup qui lui fist la teste toute fremir tant que les yeulx lui estincenserent en la teste. Si se senti estourdy du grant coup quil eust. Si feri oultre et reuint et reffiert le payen si grant coup que merueille fu. Si fu forte la bataille dentre eulx et moult dure. Et touteffois estoit *pontus* tou-

was open; and so he mett with hym at a travers, that he smote of his nose and his chynne, so that it helde bot by the skynne: so he blede in suche wyse that his shelde and his nek wer' full of bloode, that vnneth he myght sitt on hors bake. Then Pontus toke

hym by the helme and pulled itt fro the hede, and aftre gave hym suche a stroke that he fell doune to the grounde. And when he had doon so, he smote of his hede and putt itt on his swerde poynte and broght itt to the squyers Saresyns and said to theym, "Fair Saresyns, I present you with the hede of *your* maistre."

the vysage/whiche was dyscouered /& soo moche that he wente to caste suche a trauers/that he smote the nose the mouth & the chyn/so y^t all helde not bot the skyn so bledde he strongely/& soo moche he bledde y^t all his shelde before was bloody. The kynge & the people whiche sawe that stroke made ryght grete loye & thanked god. The paynym lost the blode & febled fast & so moche that unnethes he myght holde hym on his hors/& Pontus ranne vpon hym sharpely tyll he caste hym doune as he that hadde loste his blode & myght holde hymselfe no more. Than Pontus toke and rente of his helme from his heed/and afterwards smote hym suche a stroke that he made his heed for to flee too grounde. And he bowed downe and nyghed it with his swerde/and lyfte it vp and bare it vnto the two squyers sarsyns/and sayd vnto them in this wyse. Fayre lordes I present you with your maysters heed.

siours en a guet de le ferir par le visaige qui estoit descouuert. Et tant qui va getter trauersse tellement qui lui couppa le nez la bouche et le menton tant que tout ne tenoit que a la peau. Si seigna si fort que tout son escu estoit senglant. Le roy et la peuple qui virent ce coup firent grant loye et mercierent dieu. Le payen perdi le sang et affoybli tant que a paine se pouait tenir sur son cheual. Et pontus lui couroit sur asprement et tant quil reuersa comme celui qui auoit perdu le sang et lui erracha le heaulme de la teste. Et puis le feri tel coup qui lui fist la teste voler a terre. Et puis senclina et la picqua & leua sus et la porta aux deux escuiers payens. Et leur dist. Beaulx seigneurs ie vous presente la teste de vostre maistre.

Since in this specimen, as always, W is nearer the French original than D, it is clear that it cannot be derived directly from D. The obvious working hypothesis would then be the converse, that D is essentially a revision of W's original, a close translation of the French. The reviser setting out with

the intention of rewriting and condensing W would then have carried out his plan for two-fifths of the way, flagged in the undertaking for the next two-fifths, from there out, sunk to the position of mere transcriber. But this theory that W represents a complete translation of which D is an early and partial revision is far too simple to account for the facts with which we have to deal, for there is a third term to be considered, namely, that in the revision of one version by the other there was reference to a copy of the French *Ponthus*. This is proved by the existence of variants which, while they could have come about by no process of scribal corruption in the English tradition, are readily accounted for as direct mis-translations from the French. Recognizing the possibilities of capricious revision in prose of this time I have limited myself to clear instances of independent use of a French text in D and W.

When Ponthus appoints the weekly jousting for a year in the Forest of Broceliande, being in disfavor with his lady, he appropriately calls himself *le chevalier noir aux larmes blanches*, to indicate his sorrow. W translates this properly "the black knight with the white tears" (see p. 58, l. 2 f.), but D always translates "white arms."¹ Now it will be perfectly clear that no miscopying of *teres* would result in *armes*, and that conversely *armes* could never suggest *teres* to the stupidest of scribes. Reference to the French sets the matter straight in a moment; the translator of D simply read in his original for the correct *aux larmes blanches*, *aux armes blanches*, this mistake, actually found in Ortuin's French print of about 1500, is one that any careless copyist of the French text would naturally make.

Another instance. Ponthus forced to leave Brittany and Sidone by Guenelete's slander naturally calls himself in W the "moost vnhappyest (R *le plus maleureux*) knyght that lyued;" in D (p. 67, l. 14) he holds himself "the mervellest knyght livyng" quite unaccountably, till we see that the writer

¹*Armes whyte* 40, 10, 13, 28, 34; 42, 3; 43, 10, 13; 47, 17; 50, 32; 56, 4.

of D read *merveilleux* for *malheureux*. So (D, p. 49, l. 19), Geoffroy strikes a stone with his "goode swerde" so that he falls. W more naturally makes him strike it "w^t his fote," R "de son pie," out of the latter reading D, or a careless scribe, managed to make *bon espee*.

Again in W the barons advise king Huguell to make haste to offer his daughter to Pontius because Pontius is so rich that he "setteth bot lytel by any daunger," that is, will bear little haggling in the matter, and the king begins his speech of consent "Fair lordes—;" we have here a reading that a copyist is little likely to have changed into, "he setteth not by noo daungerous lordes," while a careless translator might well have so rendered the original R, [il] *en pris mains denger Seigneurs dist le roy*—, construing *denger* with *Seigneurs* and supposing the king's speech to begin only after *dist le roy*.¹ I would not insist too much upon this, though it is the most probable explanation.

Certain unimportant variant readings, which would appear at first sight merely the work of a scribe's caprice, have MS. authority. Thus in D (p. 2, l. 13) Brodas lands "he and xxi men with hym," the detail supported, if not mathematically, by F's *lui trente vngyesme* and H's *lui vintiesme*, is lacking in W and equally absent from R. So D (p. 3, l. 3) sets the number of Saracens disguised as merchants at forty, two French MSS. at least give the decimal, F, xliiij; H, *Quarante deux*, R gives no number; so W. Again D (p. 18, l. 13) makes the Saracen host "twenty" thousand in number following R's xx, W reads "thyrti" following O's xxx.

A final clear case of independent mistranslation by D is:—

D, p. 14, l. 25, "ye shuld vndirstonde wele not to bryng me another in stede of hym."

R, "Auoy," dist elle, "si eussez encor attendu, non pas [mene] ung autre pour lui."

¹ The full passages, parallel, will make the point clear.

R, "il a tres grant tresor quil en pris mains nul denger." "Seigneurs" dist le roy,
D, —that he setteth not by no daungerous lordes." Sayd the king—
W, —he setteth not by ony daunger." "Fair lordes" said y^e kynnyng—

W, "Do way," said she, "than shuld ye haue abyde as yet & not haue broughte a nother for hym."

That is, "you ought to have waited till you could get Ponthus." The mistranslation of D, especially the *vindirstonde*, is I think most easily explained on the supposition that the translator mis-read *entendu* for *attendu*, though it may be sheer mistranslation.

We come back then to the old problem with one term added. W and R cannot be independent translations, one must be a revision of the other with the use of a French text. The question then is, which is the antecedent translation?—which the revision? A general characterization of the two versions may throw some light on the question.

A glance at the notes on the lists of proper names in D (pp. 29, 30, 55) will show that the translator probably misunderstood these obscure French names and that successive scribes must have added to the confusion. W is singularly correct in this respect, so accurate that it is difficult to believe that it had ever been copied by one ignorant of the French original. In its chapter divisions¹ W practically agrees with Ortuin's print of about 1500, and the chapter headings are with rare exceptions exact translations of those of O. This may of course only mean that Ortuin's MS. was of the same class as the original of W. The coincidence is at least striking, when the three French MSS. in England differ so essentially in chapter divisions and headings. It is probably not fortuitous that D lacks chapter headings. The fact that it, the earliest German edition (1483) and the French MS. F, differing to be sure in chapter divisions, all appear without chapter headings, is at least an indication that the French *Ponthus* was originally composed without them, and that the

¹The chapter division of W corresponding to xxv, p. 88 of D, is represented in O only by a break and a large capital, but W has apparently used what was originally a mere transition—"Now here I leue of Surdyte, etc.," as a chapter heading. Otherwise the chapter divisions are coincident.

varying rubrics are, as would be expected, the work of the scribes.

We are now in a position to test the theory that D is a revision of the version represented by W. First we must suppose that a scribe setting out before 1450 to condense, unsystematically, an English romance took the pains to use the French original in this revision, we must suppose further that a plan begun thus elaborately was gradually relinquished till the reviser became mere copyist, finally we must suppose that a scribe careful enough to use a French MS. in revision, in at least two instances changed the obviously correct translation before him in favor of an error in his French original, which the correct translation would have made perfectly apparent. It is unnecessary to dwell upon the improbability of any or all of these suppositions.

Forced then to the theory that W is in some fashion a revision of D made with a French original, we shall find the motives for such a revision in the probable method of preparing W for de Worde's press. Suppose that Wynkyn de Worde planned to print the famous romance of *Ponthus* in English. He would pretty certainly have turned over one of the early printed editions of the French *Ponthus* to some hack with directions to translate it. This translator would naturally avail himself of the earlier English version, which Wynkyn de Worde, most conscientious of early printers, may have rejected as inaccurate,—keeping it open before him as he translated from the French. The early portion of D, being loose paraphrase, would have supplied him only with occasional phrases and sentences, the second portion, free translation, would have furnished him much material, the third portion, close translation, could have been transcribed for press with slight changes. The resulting version would then be W's rather slavish translation, which contains a large portion of the earlier D. The theory has more than *prima facie* probability to commend it. If W represents a translation made especially for Wynkyn de Worde's press, the unusual correctness of its

proper names is immediately accounted for, and the coincidence of its chapter divisions and headings with those of Ortuin's edition ceases to be surprising.

There are only a few instances in which errors in W are more likely to be misunderstandings of D than of a French text. For instance, where Ponthus sings his song in the forest,—

D, p. 39, l. 28, "he made ther' a song of the whiche the refrete was this melodie:—"Of byrdes and of wordly ioy is to me no disporte," etc., following.

R. "Si fist une chancon et auoit ou refrain, "Chant des oiseaulx, etc.

W reads, "[Ponthus] made a song where he was at the refraynyng of y^e byrdes, "No Joye shuld me reconforte." (Cf. note p. 39, l. 28.)

That is, W was misled by the form of D's translation into throwing most of the first line of the song into the preceding description. D had already carried over the first word of the song (*chant* = *melodie*). W simply carried the process a point further. The mistake is not likely to have arisen directly from the French. Again W has just once the mistake "whyte armes" for "whyte teres" (the first occurrence of the phrase, D, p. 40, l. 10). This cannot be a genuine mistranslation, for the phrase is correctly translated three lines below. Only in the mechanical copying of D's reading when the attention had wandered a moment from the French text could the mistake have arisen. Only such a mistake of the eye would have escaped immediate correction.

Though the satisfactory demonstration of this solution of the problem would require the identification of the printed book from which W was translated,—a study which I have lacked opportunity to make,—I believe that the evidence is sufficient to establish, at least provisionally, this theory of the relation of the two English texts.

To recapitulate: D is a rough translation in its earlier parts, a fairly close translation in its central portion as the translator gained knowledge of French or warmed up to the work, finally, a literal translation. The only extant copy was made probably about 1450 by a Yorkshire scribe, from

a standard English original. A copy of this early version, somewhat better than the Digby ms.,¹ lay before the man who prepared the version of W for the press in 1511. This reviser followed a French text, probably printed, closely. So he was obliged virtually to retranslate all the first two-fifths with only occasional assistance from the older translation, in the second two-fifths he revised the older work carefully from the French. The final fifth was so accurate that he merely transcribed it with minor corrections.

THE GERMAN PONTIUS.

Pontius was early translated into German by no less a personage than the princess Eleanor, daughter of James I., of Scotland. Her motive is set forth in the first edition of 1483, where it is stated that the Archduchess of Austria [*dise histori*], *lößlich von frantzösischer zungen in teuch getransferiert vn gemacht hat dem durchleüchtigen hochgeporenem fürsten vnd herren Sigmunden ertzherzog zû österreich, &c. jrem eelichen gemahel tzû lieb und zû geuallen*. Eleanor married Sigismund of Austria in the year 1448. The earliest German ms. is dated 1465.² Between these dates then the translation was made, and from the middle of the fifteenth century to the present time the romance of Pontius has been readily accessible in Germany. Only in Germany the romance passed the sixteenth century, there even in the eighteenth century it was published for popular reading. Probably the earliest allusion to *Pontius* (the Fr. version?) in German, is in the colophon of the first German edition of *Mélusine*, printed 1484, but written in 1456. There the translator, Thüring von Rüggeilingen, mentions it in an interesting list: *Und ich hab*

¹ For W furnishes not a few emendations to D in the last part, pp. 113-150, where the versions are virtually identical. See the footnotes *passim*.

² So in Goedeke's *Grundriss*, I, p. 356. Büsching and Von der Hagen, *Buch der Liebe*, XLVI, give 1464 in their reprint of the exact form of the colophon of the Gotha ms.

*auch gesehen vnd gelesen vil schöner hystori vn bücher Es sey von künig artus hof vn von vil seiner Ritter von der Tafelram Es sey von her Ywan vn her Gawan/her Lantzelot/her Tristran/her Parcefal/der ijegliches sein besunder hystori vnd lesen hat Dar zû von sant Wilhelm von Pontus von hertzog wilhelm von Orliens vn von Malin [? Merlin]. Büsching and von der Hagen, *Buch der Liebe*, XL and XLV, cite passages from the *Adelspiegel* of Spangenberg and the *Ehrenbrief* of Püterich von Reicherzhausen which mention *Ponthus*. But the best proof of the popularity of the story is the many editions of Eleanor's rather dull version. The translation which I have read in part in the edition of 1483 is a faithful rendering of a very early form of the French text, showing all the monotony of the French ms. R of the British Museum. The second edition (1498) already shows revision and successive printers worked it into the quite readable form of the 16th cent. *Buch der Liebe*.*

It could serve no useful purpose to repeat the matter in Goedeke's *Grundriss*, Bd. I, b. 355 f., where all mss. and printed versions are described. I will simply enumerate the editions with brief comment, marking with an asterisk those which I have not seen.

(1) Fol. Hans Schönsberger, Augsburg, 1483. (2) the same, 1498. These like the early ms. described in Büsching and von der Hagen, XLVI f., have no chapter numbers or headings. * (3) Fol. Martinus Flach, Strassburg, 1509. (4) Fol. Sigmund Bun, Strassburg, 1539. This was the edition modernized by Büsching and von der Hagen in their "*Buch der Liebe*," Berlin, 1809. It contains a long homiletic introduction which tells "*wie und warumb si [dise histori] zulesen sei*," which the interested will find at the end of Büsching and von der Hagen's reprint. It is presumably only a publisher's flourish to tell the reader that "*dise [histori] ausz Frantzösicher zungen in das Latein und nachmals in unser Teütsch sprach / bracht worden sei*." The translation is still Eleanor's, but considerably revised and provided with chapter numbers and headings.

It enlarges the final paragraph exhorting the reader to recognize the shortness of life and follow the example of Pontus. No other version has this modified ending. (5) Fol. 62 numbered leaves, no place or printer, 1548. Aside from its fine woodcuts¹ this edition has a certain interest as the source of the modified version of *Pontus* found in the famous 16th cent. *Buch der Liebe*. The introduction of (4) is again used also the chapter divisions and headings of the immediately preceding edition, but there is one interesting change. Where all the earlier German versions following the French make Pontus prepare for the tournament with a dwarf, this edition makes him consult with an "*edelmänn*," and instead of the mummery of Pontus disguised as a hermit, the masked old lady, shooting the shields, etc. (cf. p. 40 ff.), substitutes, in due form, a herald to direct the jousting. The change is evidently to make Pontus' conduct conform more nearly to the actual code of the time.² * (6) 8^{vo}. Wygand Han, Frankfurt a. M., 1557. * (7) 8^{vo}. No date or printer. Frankfurt. * (8) 8^{vo}. Frankfurt, 1568. (9) *Buch der Liebe*. Fol. Feyerabend, Frankfurt, 1578 and 1587. Printed from a version showing the changes made in 5. (10³) "*Ritter Pontus*." 16°. Frankfurt [circa 1600], follows the *Buch der Liebe*. * (11) 8^{vo}. Nürnberg, 1656. * (12) 8^{vo}. Nürnberg, 1657. * (13) 8^{vo}. Nürnberg, 1670. (14) 8^{vo}. Frankfurt, 1769. To these should be added *Ridder Pontus*, a Low German version, "*Hamborch*," 1601, the reprint in Büsching and von der Hagen's *Buch der Liebe*, 1809, and in Simrock's *Die Deutschen Volks-*

¹ Several of them bear the mark of Hans Schäufelin the younger, a monogram HS. and a small spade.

² Büsching and von der Hagen, p. I., had already noticed this difference between the version they printed (4), and that of the 16th. cent. *Buch der Liebe*, but they were ignorant of this ed. of 1548, in which the change first occurs.

³ The edition is not cited in Goedeke, unless it is No. 7. It is not probable that he should have assigned so early a date to the book. I have seen 10 in the British Museum, it is if anything, later than the date assigned. My numbers 11-14 are Goedeke's 10-13.

bücher, vol. XI, Frankfurt, 1865, as usual without indication of source. Since it has the additional didactic paragraph found only in the ed. of 1539 and von der Hagen's reprint it is pretty certain that Simrock merely reprinted von der Hagen's edition. Since Simrock's series was popular rather than antiquarian in intention, it closes a tradition of nearly four hundred years of the popular survival of the romance of Ponthus in Germany.

THE PONTUS-RÍMUR.

It was a curious fate that the chivalresque *Ponthus*, which had come through the stages of the heroic *Geste of King Horn* and the French roman d'Aventure, should return towards its origins by being done into a Northern rímur. I learned first of the existence of this version through examining a small paper MS., Bor. 106¹ of the Bodleian Library,—the first page told me that it was the second part of a Pontus-rímur and by Petür Einarsson. This is all I should have known about it, if my friend, Dr. W. H. Schofield, had not come to my aid. I print entire the notes he has kindly sent me from Christiania.

"The Icelandic work usually called *Pontus-rímur* has not, so far as I know, been published. It is, however, preserved more or less complete in at least 10 MSS. (outside of that one in the Bodleian to which you refer). Seven of them are in the Arnamagnæan collection in Copenhagen, and may be found described in the *Katalog over den Arnamagnæanske Håndskriftsamling*, Copen., 1892-94, Vol. II, Parts 1-2, under the following numbers:

- No. 1562 (AM. 611 g, 4^{to}—paper of 17th century).
- " 1575 (AM. 613 e, 4^{to}— " " ").
- " 1576 (AM. 613 f, 4^{to}— " " ").
- " 1578 (AM. 613 h, 4^{to}— " " ").
- " 1579 (AM. 613 i, 4^{to}—paper, ca. 1700).
- " 1583 (AM. 614 d, 4^{to}— " " 1656).
- " 2611, 2, (Rask, 40—18th century).

¹ Ff. 163. The heading is, *Añar Partur Pontus Rímna Orrturg: Petre Einarssyne*. It is divided into 17 "fits." In Dr. Schofield's notes Einarsson is said to be the author of the last 16 songs of the *rímur*. The difference may indicate only a scribe's subdivision of one of the original songs.

"Jón Þorkelsson in his Doctor's thesis entitled *Om Digtingen paa Island i det 15 og 16. Aarhundrede*, Copen., 1888, p. 377, mentions three others: two fragmentary paper MSS. in Stockholm, and another fragment, I Bfél. Nr. 238, 8^{vo}.

"From the last-named book, I extract the following information as to the *Pontus-rímur*, and its author:

"The work was begun by MAGNÚS JÓNSSON surnamed PRÚÐI, or GAMLI, who was born between 1520-25 and died in 1591. It seems to have been written in his 33rd year, for he speaks of his first wife as then dead. He, however, finished only the first 13 songs. His heirs decided that the poem should be continued by the priest ÓLAFÚR HALDÓRSSON (who died before 1639); but he got no farther than the 14th and 15th songs. Later in the 17th century, it was continued by Pétur Einarsson of Ballará (still alive in 1665), who began where Magnús left off, and brought the work to a conclusion, writing songs XIV to XXIX. Thus we have two versions of songs XIV and XV.

"The corresponding saga is to be found in Thott's MS., No. 513, 8^{vo}; but this seems to have been made up after the *rímur* by Magnús Jónsson digri (great-grandson of Magnús Jónsson prúði), died 1702. In (Uno von Troil), *Bref Rörande en Resa til Island*, 1772, Upsala, 1777, p. 164, we have a *Pontúsar* saga mentioned.

"Magnús was given the complimentary surname (*hinn*) *prúði*, i. e., 'the elegant,' because of the distinction of his bearing, and the general esteem in which he was held. His other surname (*hinn*) *gamli*, i. e., 'the old,' was doubtless not added until the last part of the 17th century, when his great-grand-son was a grown man. His descendants raised a very costly monument to his memory, provided with a long Latin inscription.

"In *Historia Literaria Islandiæ*, auctore Halldano Einari, Ed. nova, 1786, p. 85, we have the following insertion:

"*Magnus Johannis*, regionis Torska-fiordensis Choronomus, illustri genere natus, fatis cessit 1596, Historiam Ponti, pulchro verborum delectu, carmineque numeroso gratiorum fecit. Tribuntur porro illi in quibusdam exemplaribus XII carmina, quæ historiam Ingrari, VIII, quæ Conradi Richardi Imperatoris filii, & nonnulla, quæ Amici & Æmilii complectuntur historias.

"Magnús Jónsson prúði was one of the most enlightened and cultivated men of his time. He was considered the best speaker then living, and one of the most learned of jurists. He was also an historian, and is said to have composed annals and other similar works. As a poet he was held in unusually high esteem by his contemporaries.

"Most of his shorter poems are lost, only separate verses being found here and there in chronicles and histories. Among other things of his, which are preserved, we have a *Amíkusrímur* og *Amíltus* (i. e., *rímur* on Amis and Amiloun), on which see Kölbing in *Beit. zur Gesch. der deut. Sprache*, IV, 1877, pp. 271-314; also *Germania*, XIX, 184-189. This was

edited by Kölbing in his *Alteng. Bibliothek*, II, Heilbronn, 1884, pp. 189-229. He, however, did not know the name of the author, and was wrong in dating it at ca. 1500, for it really should be dated ca. 1560-70, or about the same time as the *Pontus-rímur* (see Þorkelsson, pp. 377-8).

"Magnús was very familiar with German. In his youth he spent several years in Germany, where he doubtless laid the foundation of his unusual and all-round culture. It looks as if it was, therefore, a German version of the Pontus story on which he based his *rímur*. Yet Þorkelsson notes (p. 118) that there are certain verses on Pontus (preserved in other Icel. documents) which are not in Magnús's poem, and seem to point to an older poem on the subject. Séra Þorsteinn Pétursson puts the *Pontus-rímur* in the 15th century. This is probably a blunder; but he may have known other older versions of the story than those preserved (p. 176).

"Þorkelsson notes further (p. 117) that certain verses of the *Pontus-rímur* are still living in popular tradition in Iceland."

I need only add that the form of the proper names in the Bodleian MS. made it clear that Einarsson worked from a German, not a French version; in this it is probable that he only followed Magnus Jonsson. *Gendil*, f. 24^b, 26, comes from the *Gendelot* of the German versions. *Geneve*, 40^b, *Genefe*, 41^b, is the German form of Guenever. Even more striking is *Prothus*, 51^b, for the French *Brodas*. *Tiburt*, 89^b, is also the German, not the French form of the name of Ponthus' father. So *Henrich*, 39^b, 59^b.

LITERARY CONSIDERATIONS.

The late prose romances have found little favor with the critics, and with a certain justice, for most of them are clearly debasements, vulgarizations in the bad sense, of stories that had been better told. MM. Montaignon and Mayer in their passing characterization of *Ponthus* as *pauvre livre* and *faible ouvrage*, evidently regard the book as at best an average example of its dull class. The indulgence of an editor for the foster-child of his fancy, if no more serious consideration, would make me bespeak for the book at least the mitigated condemnation of faint praise.

In its programme of "mervelles," jousts, battles and adventures, the book, it seems to me, calls neither for praise nor blame. Such descriptions have the inevitable monotony of the *genre*, yet I believe the reader will find Pontius' first battle with the Saracen messenger convincingly sanguinary, and Guenelete, at the last, a formidable villain of a melodramatic sort. The long lists of names, a sheer hindrance to the enjoyment of the English version, constituted a very real and legitimate attraction to the first readers of the romance. The Angevin family of Tour Landry and their neighbors certainly felt no less a thrill at recognizing their ancestors fighting for the faith than did the high-born Athenian in reading familiar names among the captains that sailed for Troy to avenge Helen's rape. But as sheer romance, *Pontius* is certainly far inferior to Malory and in no way notable among stories of adventure.

As a serious and consistent attempt to draw the portrait of an ideal knight of the 15th century, in character as well as in achievement, *Pontius* has, I believe, a unique interest. No great literary skill in the execution of this task was to be expected; and yet it must be said to the unknown author's credit that he thoroughly believed in his own hero, and that his ideal of the knightly character was high and manly. So that in *Pontius* we have a hero who has no vices and all the virtues, and yet is distinctly not a prig,—no Grandison out of due time. Besides the older duties of valor and generosity, the author proposes for his hero above all things a certain cleanness of life and a tactful kindliness that includes all relations of life. In the attempt to express in incident some of the finer emotions, I believe the romance rises well above its class. Recognizing fully the incompleteness of performance in every case, it was no perfunctory hand that described Sidone's sorrow at her lover's departure, Pontius' farewell to Brittany, his recognition of his mother, and many another less notable scene of the book. The romancer then offers as the chief virtues of his hero a certain sweetness and gaiety of

mind, purity and justness of life. Only in the instructions to Pollides in the presence of his wife does Ponthus appear to strike a jarring note. A modern reader would hope that Genever's assurance, "Ser, he shall doo as a goode man owe to doo," was spoken with a certain resentment. But we must remember that the 15th century took its instruction, as well as its transgression, sturdily. The whole scene and the long homily that Ponthus reads his cousin must have been sufficiently in character when the book was written. Ponthus as definitely represents the later ideal of knighthood,—the tone of the book is often singularly like the life of the Chevalier Bayard,—as Gawain represented the earlier ideal of knightly courtesy. The later hero, obscurely represented in a single romance, can never in any way rival the knight of Arthur's court, celebrated by the great mediæval romancers, but I believe that the character of Ponthus will hold a certain representative value, permanent, if humble. It was no wholly frivolous or contemptible motive that gave the book its contemporary popularity. It was the portrait of a knight that men recognized and that men approved.

From the point of view of style, *faible ouvrage* the French *Ponthus* certainly is. Better things may be said of the English translation. It will I believe be difficult to find any English prose of the first half of the 15th century on the whole so fluent and readable. Briskly and easily the story chatters along, when most of the prose of the time lumbers in hopeless monotony. Style, in the sense in which Malory, Pecoek, or a modern has style, the story has not. It is more like good unaffected talk than anything else,—no slight merit at the time, and a merit almost wholly the translator's. Just as the homespun virtues and equally clear-cut vices of the book cannot compete in interest with the subtle union of sensuality and religious mysticism that in Malory exercises a somewhat morbid fascination, so the clearness and brightness of its English, excellent for its subject, may appear

insignificant, almost inaudible, when Malory resounds in full volume; yet there is room for both, and none of the early English prose romances is likely to suffer less by the contrast. With all its defects of proportion, and they are many, it remains a pleasantly told story "wherof a man may lerne many goode ensamples" of an ideal of character by no means valueless to-day. In the prose of the 15th century it should gain and hold a modest place.

PLAN OF THE PRESENT EDITION.

The text printed is that of the Digby ms. with only the following changes,—the representation of contractions by the full form in *Italic*, the normalization of the use of capitals, the introduction of paragraphing and punctuation. The first change is now universal, the publishing of a fac-simile page makes it unnecessary to follow the fashion of the ms.—unsightly on the printed page,—in capitalization, the absence of punctuation in the ms. except a rare ¶ and ||,—always reproduced in the text,—makes the introduction of punctuation indispensable to the comfortable use of the text, finally when it is once understood that the ms. is written solidly with no breaks in the chapters, except the few marked by ¶¶, the division into paragraphs in the text, an obvious convenience, is in no way misleading. Rare editorial changes are clearly explained in the footnotes or, in the case of insertions inclosed in brackets or parentheses, the former [] indicate matter supplied by the editor, the latter () emendations from Wynkyn de Worde's edition of 1511. To supply the lack of any running analysis in the original I have written the chapter headings inclosed in brackets. That they should be congruous with the text, I have followed the orthography, and attempted to imitate the style of the Digby ms. The perils of this sort of composition have, I hope, been avoided

by the use whenever practicable of material supplied in the text itself, of the chapter headings of W, or the translation and imitation of the chapter headings of the French MS. The difficulty confronting every editor of texts of this period, the treatment of terminal tags and flourishes, has been the less in this case: first, because the fac-simile page gives all needful information upon this point; second, because the Yorkshire scribe of the MS. could have pronounced no final e's; third, because most of these tags are clearly only flourishes. It seemed advisable then to disregard all except the tailed r. This is so much more clearly written than other tags and so consistently used that it seemed desirable to represent it in the text. An \bar{r} was then cut to represent the tailed character of the MS. Occasionally, usually after $-r\bar{r}$, I have printed $-rre$, and $-re$, as more sightly.

It was at first my intention to insert all textual notes at the foot of the page. All the readings of the MS., when changed in the text, are so recorded. The impracticability of holding the proof-sheets long, made it necessary to place the longer textual notes, and a few that escaped my attention among the general notes. The proper names are frequently so thoroughly corrupted in the MS. that it seemed best in the text to abide by the strictly palaeographical reading, and to make the necessary corrections in the case of important names in the alphabetical list of proper names, in the case of minor names in the longer lists, in the general notes. Any formal inconsistency in this matter will I trust be the more readily pardoned, that the whole material is readily accessible. Finally the reasonable certainty that W is a revision of D made it superfluous to swell this already bulky volume with its innumerable variant readings. I have registered at the foot of the page or among the general notes all readings of W which have any intrinsic interest, besides the few that appear to represent readings of the old translation better than those transmitted in D.

NOTES.

CONTRACTIONS.

D. MS. Digby 185 of the Bodleian Library.

W. Wynkyn de Worde's Ed. of 1511.

R. MS. Royal 15, E. VI, Brit. Mus., of the French Text.

H. MS. Hh. 3, 16, Cambr., of the French Text.

F. MS. Ff. 3, 31, Cambr., of the French Text.

O. Ortuin's Ed., Lyon, circa 1500, of the French Text.

P. 2, l. 11, passed Spayne in Galice. The reading is justified by H, [il] *passa par en coste espaigne et en galice*, and F, *le vent le amena passer toute espaigne en galice*, but W's reading *besyde Croyne* is the better. It follows R, [il] *passa par joustes Couloine en Galice*.

P. 9, l. 17, Armoric. W's reading *Morygne* appears to be a corruption of R's *Montgrant*.

P. 9, l. 20, Mast. W, *sayle yerde*; R, *tref*.

P. 10, l. 5, Susteny. R, *susinio*; W, *suffone* (sic). *Sucinio* is the name of a château, once the summer residence of the Dukes of Brittany near Sarzeau.

P. 10, l. 17, Viceat. W, *verrac*.

P. 10, l. 30. W has only, *So made he theym to lepe upon theyr horses & led theym to Vennes*, following R literally.

The easiest way out of the contradictory reading in D is to read with W, *theym* for *hym* in both instances in l. 30 f., and to suppose that the detail *behinde hym*, not in the French, was copied in by mistake from the passage in l. 13. A later scribe, wishing to emphasize Pontius' dignity as a prince, would have added the clause *and he . . . aloone*.

P. 11, l. 9, whete. W, *marchaundyse*; R, *fourmens*.

P. 11, l. 31. W names the game, *yf he played at the playe of the tenys*, etc.; R. *a la pelotte*; O, *paume*.

P. 12, l. 5, breke his tayle. The expression is in the *Romaunt of the Rose*, l. 6221 :

Right thus whyl Fals-Semblaunt sermoneth
Eftsones Love him aresoneth,
And brak his tale in the speking.

P. 12, l. 8, live dayes. W interpolates with R, the following conventional description: *for he was grete and large in y^e brest & small in the waste/& y^e shuldres y^e armes y^e thyghes and y^e fete were made of ryght deuyse/y^e vysage was clere browne/the eyen so meke/the mouth rede/& the nose streyte/he semed lyke an aungell, etc.* In other respects also the versions differ slightly at this point.

P. 13, l. 11, palfrey. W adds with R, *and a meruayllous gentyll faucon.*

P. 13, l. 16, Norye. R, *nourriture*; W, *chylde*.

P. 14, l. 25, for . . . copp, which translates R, is not in W.

P. 15, l. 21 f. A mistranslation or arbitrary change. In W Sidone replies, "*I byleue the,*" also as she *whiche was caught w^t y^e loue of hym*; R, *comme celle qui ia estoit toute esprise de lamour de lui.*

P. 18, l. 29, fiȝ-hows. W also uses the technical word *fyre hous*; R, *chascun feu.*

P. 19, l. 27, Susanne. Allusions to the apocryphal chapters of Daniel are, I believe, relatively rare, at least in English literature. In *Horn et Rimel*, l. 2082 ff., Horn tells the king that he will maintain his innocence by combat against five or six:

Taunt me fi en cel deu. ki salua israel.
Susanne deliuerad. par lenfant daniel.
E lui meimes pus. des lions el putel.

In Shylock's taunting of Portia, "A Daniel come to judgment! yea, a Daniel," *Merch. of Venice*, iv, 1, 223, is the same allusion.

P. 19, *passim*, the and thou. As in all texts of this time *ye* is used in polite address, *thou* apparently only contemptuously. In the present instance Ponthus defies the Saracen with *the*, and the Saracen returns the contemptuous pronoun.

Similarly p. 20, l. 27, the Saracen in pitying scorn of Ponthus calls him *thou*, which Ponthus returns.

P. 22, l. 18, it is on the contrary used in prayer to Christ. W uses *ye* and *your* in this instance.

Pontius, in giving the Saracen king, Corbatan, his death-blow, p. 85, l. 2, calls him at once *false Saresyn* and *thou*.

Pontius chides his yeoman, p. 97, l. 15, *Hold thy peace*.

Gueuelete, p. 97, l. 27, calls Pontius, disguised as a beggar, *thou*, in anger.

The porter of the hall, rudely brushed aside, curses Pontius with *thou*.

Sidone always calls Gueuelete *thou* as she upbraids him for his treachery, p. 130, l. 30 ff. Pontius similarly when on the point of killing Gueuelete in the hall, p. 134, l. 28 f. With the single exception of the instance in prayer, it is always used in anger or in scorn in this text, never in intimacy.

P. 20, l. 2, kerchef. W, *pensell*.

P. 24, l. 4, Morteyne. W adds *paynel*.

P. 24, l. 5, Duches. W, *Countesse*.

P. 24, l. 6, deid. W adds with R, *and her sone was but a yere olde*.

P. 24, l. 6, Gouter. W, *payne de chateau Goutyer*; R, *payen*; O, *paon*.

P. 24, l. 29, Vale. W adds with R, *the lorde of dynaux of ye brytons, brytonautes. And of Galos*, etc. The *Galyce* of D is then a corruption of *Galos*.

P. 24, l. 30, Edmund. W and R, *Guy*.—Dole. W, the later form *dueil*.—La Roche. W and R, *ronge*.

P. 24, l. 34, Mayne. W, *mans*.

P. 25, l. 14, Robt. de Sanguyn, Ranald de Sylle. The first name is hard to identify, probably a mere corruption. W, *Regnault de sully/and Aygret de pouilly*; R, *Robert de chenegue, regnault de sulli & aigret de prully*.

P. 28, l. 13, ryght. R, *senestre*; W renders *best*, apparently a printer's error for *left*.

P. 28, l. 14, Vicecounte Daniou. W, *Erle of Dongres* apparently the correct reading, but R has *le viconte de rohan* agreeing in the title with D.

P. 28, l. 15, Valoynes. W and R, *la Roche*.

P. 28, l. 28, Creton. W and R, *Craon*.

P. 28, l. 27–30. I give a characteristic variant of W, which agrees with R, *Kynge Karados helde with grete dystres the erle of Mans/and the lorde of Craon/and had ouerthrowen them and many of the manceaus and herupoys/as Hamelyn de sylle, Geruays de la porte, Thybault de matheselon, Peter de doncelles, Sauary de la hay, Gerarde de chateau goutyer, Guyllam de roches, Geoffrey de lesygnen/and Leoncel. But they defended them on fote/& were assembled whiche auayled them moche. Androue de la toure/and Bertram de donne sette grete payne for to recouer theym/but there was too grete prees of saresynes/and soo grete a folke that vnnethes myght they come to them/tyll that Guyllam de roches sawe Ponthus whiche that made the renges to shake with the helpe that sewed hym. "Syr it is nede se yonder a grete partye of our barons the whiche ben on fote."*

D certainly gains by dropping the list of names, but compresses so much that the incident is hardly clear.

P. 29, l. 6, Ralond de Avyon. Probably a corruption of R's *rol. de dynain*; W, *Guyllam de dygnan*.

P. 29, l. 24, Vaucay. W, *Bausaye mayle*.—Daniou. W, *daner*.

P. 30, l. 20, Peonny. W, *paynell*.—Wylron. W, *Villyers*.

P. 30, l. 21, Roger. W and O, *Hongres*.

P. 30, l. 22, Gaciane de Mounte Vyel. W, *Gassos de Mountreul*; probably for *Montreuil-Bellay*.—Tenull. W and O, *chenulle*; possibly an error for Chemillé in Maine.

P. 30, l. 23, Hundes de Prouere. W, *Endes de penaunces*.

P. 30, l. 24, Chastameny. W, *Gautyer de chateau neuf*.—Monte Agnant. W, *Androue de Montagu*.

P. 30, l. 26, Mangon. W, *dauauger*; O, *dauaucheus*.

P. 30, l. 27, Deyneṛ. W, *dygnan*; O, *dinant*.

P. 32, l. 10, lyve. W, *woman*; R, *femme*. We should probably emend by reading *love*.

P. 33, l. 3, for they had hym in theyr conceyte, *had* is subjunctive for *should have*. Cf. W, *to the ende that they sholde haue hym in the more fauour*. A semi-colon or period should follow *grace*.

P. 33, l. 8, that . . . taken, follows R, *Et puis leur dist apres quilz auvient petitement aduise*; W mistranslates, *after that he had auysed hym a little*.

P. 33, l. 22, thre. W, *two*; R, *deux*.

Douce Fr., p. 34, l. 4, dyuers gyftis, dyuers is evidently a corruption of *dyners*. W and R concur in D's reading.

P. 34, l. 5, draghtes. W, *signes*; R, *signe*.

P. 36, l. 7. W, *y^t is foly to sette her herre* [sic herte] *so on fledde folke*, an interesting translation of R's *gens de vollaiges*.

P. 36, l. 26, x. W, *a two*; R, *xv*.

P. 37, l. 13, putt fro. W, *benymme*.

P. 39, l. 29 ff. I give the text of the quatrain from R:

Chant des oyseaulx ne nulle ioye.

Ne me¹ puet² reconforter,

Quant celle que³ tant amoye⁴

⁵ Me veult delle⁶ estranger.

P. 40, l. 9, wretyn in this wyse. R, *vnes lettres escrites en lettre de fourme*; W, *wryten in foure*, an absurd mistranslation.

P. 40, l. 33, swerd. W, *swerde with the gyrdell of golde & the crowne of golde*.

P. 41, l. 23, rede toun. W, *vyle ronge* by error for R's *ville rouge*.

P. 41, l. 34, Bellacion. W, *brylaunson*; R, *bellencon*.

P. 54, l. 1, Boloys. W, *bloys*.

P. 54, l. 2, Guyllem de Roches. W and R, *damp Martyne*.

P. 54, l. 4, Rosylyon. W, *Robert de resyllyon*; R, *tybault de roussilon*.

P. 55, l. 22, Averenses. W and R, *Osteryche*.

P. 55, l. 23, Barry. W and R, *bar*.

P. 55, l. 24, Mount Bernard. W, *Mountbelyart*.

P. 55, l. 26, Savye. W and R, *savoye*.

P. 56, l. 1, Bellacon. W, *Belenson*; R, *bellencon*.

¹ H, F, O; R omits.

² O, *puët*.

³ H, *que ie*.

⁴ O, *iamoie*.

⁵ H, *Si me*.

⁶ O, *du tout*.

P. 59, l. 18 ff. R, *Si commencerent menestrelz a sonner de toute manieres et heraulx a crier que len eust pas ouy dieu tonner, que tout le bois retentissoit.*

I have not happened upon this conceit outside of Chrétien. Cf. Yvain (Foerster, l. 2348 ff.):

Li sain, li cor et les buisines
Font le chastel si resoner
Qu'an n'i oïst Deu toner.

P. 60, l. 14, Ponthus. W adds with R, & *his hors al whyte with a grete rede rose that betokened his lady.*

P. 61, l. 11 f. As W explains, because Ponthus thought that Bernard should have had the prize Monday.

P. 65, l. 14, messe-booke. W, *holy gospels*; R, *saincte euangiles.*

P. 65, l. 27, thre or fou?. W and R, *two or thre*; so p. 66, l. 13.

P. 70, l. 26, Henry. W, always *Harry.*

P. 72, l. 4, Droyte Voy. W reads always, perhaps, by a printer's error, *driot voyce*; so p. 91, l. 20 and 104, l. 17.

P. 74, l. 27, demaunded hym. W, *resoned hym*; R, *la* (sic) *raisonna*, read *l'araisonna.*

P. 76, l. 1, grete rumour. W, *rygour*, omits *grete*; R, *grant guerre.*

P. 80, l. 20, is not myche worthe—misses the point. W, *is onely but selfewyllfulnes of hertes of grete lordes*; R, *le debat nest pas chose fors de grans seigneurs.* This is the necessary introduction to Ponthus' words on the duty of princes.

P. 81, l. 31, stedes. W adds with R, & *syxe coursers.*

P. 82, l. 11, Corbatan. W and R, always *Corboran.*

P. 84, l. 8, Fireague. So O, *Feragu*; but W, *Feragne*, and R, *Ferragny.*

P. 84, l. 22, voyde place. W, *grete way.*

P. 86, l. 1. R, *La nef fu a merueilles grande et painte et ystoriee*; W, *y shyppe was passynge grete and wele poynted.* Both English versions appear to have misunderstood the

description of the decorated ship, unless *poynsted* is an error for *paynted*.

P. 86, l. 9, Coffyrs and trunks. W, *hutches and these grete cofers*; R, *huches*.

P. 89, l. 5, Mounte Belyard. R, *Montbliart*.

P. 90, l. 21, fonde of Guenelete. W, *affonned on G*. I do not know the word, are the *n*'s misprints for *u*'s? R, *affole*.

P. 90, l. 30. It is perhaps worth while to have this certainly comprehensive description in all the versions. W, *for men saye y^t he hath many euyll condycyons/& also he is aged and corsyous and lame and dronklew*; R, [il] *est si gras si viel des monnyacle et yurongue*.

P. 97, l. 30, make his berd. I do not know this expression in the sense of give one a beating. It usually means to outwit, as in the *Reves Tale*, l. 176,

Yet can a miller make a clerkes berd,

also, *Wife of Bath's Prol.*, l. 361,

Yet could I make his berd, so mote I thee.

P. 98, l. 22, gallerye. So R; W, *tresounce*. Bradley-Stratmann has only one instance of the word, *Pr.*, P. 502.

P. 100, l. 31, by x and x. W with R, *by .xx. by .xxx.*

P. 102, l. 12, Doule. W, *Dueyl*; R, *dueil*.

P. 103, l. 26, As Gode live, etc. I should have emended *Gode* to *goode*, cf. W, *Ponthus sayd y^t good lyfe gyue hym god as to his lorde*, following R.

[P], *lui dist que bonne vie lui donnast dieu comment a son souuerain sires*.

P. 106, l. 28, conne you thonke. W continues, *for that ye haue done so well for his soule/for all his frendes shall thanke you & gyue you grete pryce. Ponthus sayd thynges that ought to be shall fall/ye ought not for to be full gladde ye shall haue none dower by cause ye set neuer fote in his bed with him/& thus he bourded with her & talked of many dyuers thynges. And than he wente to the kyng, etc.* All this in R.

P. 108, l. 2. W adds that they should assemble *at the toure of derbendell fast by the thalamount*; R, *talemont*, and further expands the passage, following R.

P. 110, l. 23, gyftes. W substitutes for the following sentence, *And then came Guyllam de roches a good knyghte Paraunt de rochefort/the lorde de douay, Pyers de donne, Gerarde de chateau goutyer, Johñ melcurier with the herupoys. Of the manceaus/beaunmount la vale, Sygles de doncelles and other of the countre of mayne. Of Tourayne baussay mayle hay and of other tourangeaus. Of poytw/the vycount of toures/the erles brother of marche/maulyon chastemur/la garnache & dyuers other.* The list is not in R.

P. 111, l. 12, any pouere man. W omits *pouere*; R, *Sil trouast aucuns pour scauoir lestre du pays*. D has apparently doubly translated *pour*, or it may have been repeated in D's original, once as *pouere*, "poor," and again as the preposition.

P. 112, l. 5, and caste—othre. W, *wepete bothe two*; R, *pleurent tous deux lun sur lautre*.

P. 112, l. 28–30. This speech is Sir Patrick's in W. The Earl first sees Pollides and gives the command with l. 31 ff.

P. 115, l. 14, to-stowpe?

P. 115, l. 17, ay to. W, *a two*, probably the original reading.

P. 116, l. 13, Herupoys. W, *Herupoys, Hubert de craon, Pyers de chenulle/& of knyghtes Thybault de bryse, (H. de M. as in D), Eustace de la poyssonier*.

P. 116, l. 18, Hardenyr. W and O, *Ardenne*.

P. 116, l. 20, William. W and O, *Rycharde*.—Pamell. W, *Paynell*; O, *panel*.

P. 119, l. 16, vowes to the pope. The detail is neither in W nor R. I do not know of any other instance of vowing to the pope at a feast. It appears that we should read *po* and regard the ceremony as a peacock vow.

P. 135, l. 8, our author need not have known Chrétien's

P. 136, l. 20, a twenty. W and R, *a twelve*.

P. 140, l. 7, Chateaubreaunce. W, *chateau bryaunt*.

P. 146, l. 6, so shuld ye wors reioys. W, *wherof ye sholde reioyse*; R, *Et lamour donc vous deueries iouyr*. D mistranslates the clause.

P. 146, l. 9, withdrawe it. I. e., you would not be able to recall her fancy (*plesaunce*) from her lover, when you would do so.

P. 149, l. 17, Malle. W, *Mailles*.

NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES.

The names of minor characters in the story are omitted; also such common names as *Spayne, Fraunce, England*, when the modern, geographical equivalent is obvious. An interrogation point indicates that I have not been able to identify the name. The variants from W, given in the notes, should always be consulted for the longer lists of names in the text.

Amroy, *error for Auray near Vannes*, 96, 30.

Andrewe, *see Landry*.

Aniou, Duches of, 24, 5.

Aragon, 1, 6; *Arragonne, Kyng of*, 121, 32.

Armoric, *for Armorica*, Brittany, 9, 17.

Auncenys, Geffray d', Ancenis, 116, 12.

Aurences, Vicecounte d', Avranches in *Normandy*, 24, 3; *error for Fr. Auteriche*, 55, 22 (*see note*).

Avyon, Ralond de, *error for Dinan*, ? 29, 6 (*see note*).

Babilon, Sultan of, 1, 10; *Babilone*, 117, 31.

Baniers, Ser William de, ? 55, 25.

Bausy, Hondes de, ? 149, 17; *Vaucay, Lorde*, 29, 24.

Bellacion, *another name for the "Welle of Mervells"*, 41, 34; *Bellacon*, 56, 1.

Boloys, Tybould de, Blois, 54, 1.

Breales, a Saracen, 29, 3; *Fr. Broalis*.

Breselyn, *forest of*, Broceliande, 39, 16; *Breselyne*, 40, 12.

Breste, 24, 21.

- Bretayn, Brittany, 10, 5; *Little Bretayn*, 9, 17; *L. Bretayne*, 9, 25; *Bretane*, 41, 19; *Bretan*, 70, 15; *Pety Bretan*, 82, 14.
- Brice, Huberd de, *perhaps Brézé, Anjou*, 116, 14.
- Brodas, *son of the Sultan of Babylon, conquerer of Galicia*, 3, 10; 4, 12; 112, 32. W, *Broadas*.
- Burgon, king of, 89, 7; *Burgone*, 89, 4; *Duke of B.*, 103, 6 (footnote); *Burgonne*, 101, 31. *His brother Guy B.*, 105, 33.
- Canterbury, Archbishop of, 81, 28; *Bishop of*, 83, 14.
- Castellyon, Châteaugiron, *Brittany*, 61, 19 (note).
- Chastameny, Gauter de, ? 30, 24 (note).
- Chateawbreauce, *Geffray de*, Châteaubriant, *Anjou*, 140, 7.
- Chasteaue Gouteř, Château-Gontier, ? 24, 6 (see note).
- Corbadan, *a Saracen*, 29, 3.
- Corbatan, *son of the Sultan, invader of England*, 82, 11; 84, 11. W and R, *Corboran*.
- Cornewale, King of, Cornwall, 77, 6; 87, 11.
- Couleigne, Corunna in *Galicia*, 2, 12; *Couleign*, 2, 21; *Colleyn*, 110, 32; *Coleigne*, 10, 23; *Colloigne*, 94, 27; 111, 2; *by false etymology, Columpne*, 116, 26; 117, 19.
- Creton, Craon, *Normandy*, 28, 28 (note).
- Crusses, Graue de, ? 116, 19.
- Dace, Earl of, *error for Douglas*, ? 96, 3 (footnote).
- Dancen, *Geffray*, ? 28, 15.
- Dampdenis, *Englished in W as Syr Denys*; O, *dādenis*, 3, 25.
- Danion, Vicounte, *error for Donges*, ? 28, 14 (note); *Geruast D. error*, 29, 24 (note).
- Darcy, Earle of, *error*, ? 96, 2 (footnote).
- Daunges, Vicount of, Donges, *Brittany*, 60, 16; 139, 3.
- Destrue, Erle of, Asturias, *Ponthus' uncle*, 7, 14; 111, 15; *Desture (as in W and R)*, 137, 7.
- Deyneř, Hubberd de, Dinard, 30, 27.
- Dole, Rauland de, Dol, 24, 30; *Lady of Doule*, 102, 12; *Pier' de*, 30, 25.

- Dorbendelle, *tour* of, Derbendelle near Talmont (Vendée), 110, 19 (*see* p. 5).
- Doune, Piers de, ? 149, 14.
- Douncelles, Lorde, 30, 21 ; *Oliver* de, 116, 18.
- Ellious, *Sidone's* maid, 14, 2 ; 68, 9 ; *Elious*, 14, 7 ; *Ellyous*, 15, 7 ; 127, 23. *Fr. Eloix*.
- Fireague, a Saracen, 84, 8 (*see* note and p. 18).
- Galice, Galicia, 2, 11.
- Galyce, error for Galos (*Gaulish Britons*), 24, 29 (*note*).
- Gener, elder of the English king, 73, 8 ; *Gener*', 74, 11 ; 136, 22 ; *Geneuer*', 137, 18 ; *Geneuer*, 143, 16 ; 144, 8.
- Gloucestre, Earl of, 95, 36 ; 140, 15 ; *Duke* of, 138, 16 ; 139, 1.
- Gloucestre, Rolande, 72, 30.
- Gueuelete, *Treacherous companion of Pontius*, 34, 19 ; 63, 11 ; 88, 31 ; 97, 21 ; 124, 11 (*see* p. 18).
- Hampton, *English port*, 70, 22.
- Henry, younger son of the king of England, 70, 26 ; 84, 12.
- Herland, *seneschal of Brittany, Pontius' guardian*, 10, 19 ; 38, 29 ; 90, 19 ; *Herlande*, 10, 3 ; 13, 10.
- Hungary, 57, 8.
- Huguell, *king of Brittany, Sidone's father*, 9, 25.
- Ireland, king of, 76, 22 ; 77, 21 ; *Ireland*, 76, 4, 21 ; *Irlond*, 76, 2.
- John, elder son of the king of England, 83, 2 ; 84, 9.
- Karodas, son of the sultan of Babylon, invader of England, 27, 16, 25 ; 28, 27 ; *Carodas*, 18, 22 ; *Karados*, 27, 10. W and R always *Karados*.
- Lay Forest, Amaulry de, ? 116, 17 ; *Hulland de La Foryste*, 30, 25.
- Lay Garnache, John de, ? 116, 16.
- La Hay, *Fresell* de, ? 30, 23.
- Lay Poys, Eustace de, for La Possonnière *Maine*, 116, 15 (*note*).
- La Roche, Bernard de, *Brittany*, 29, 32 ; 43, 4, 19 ; *Barnard*, 31, 17 ; *Guylyam* de, 28, 29 ; *G. de Roches*, 24, 7 ; 29, 5 ; 110, 23 ; *Roger* de, 24, 30.

- Laznyen, Geoffrey de, Lusignan *in Poitou*, 25, 1; 31, 16;
 43, 5; 50, 8; 107, 27; *Laznyen*, 24, 9; *Lazygne*, 139,
 17; 140, 8; *Lasigne*, 143, 33; 148, 7.
 Leon, Vicounte de, Lion-sur-Mer, 24, 28; 105, 10; *Herdy*
de Lyon, 30, 26.
 Lyon, Ile of, I. d'Oleron, *off La Rochelle*, 110, 31 (*footnote*).
 Mahounde, 5, 6; *Mahown*, 1, 21.
 Malle, Hubberd de, ? *Touraine*, 149, 17.
 Mangon, John de, ? 30, 26 (*note*).
 Mauleon, Leonell de la, ? 139, 18; *Malleon*, 149, 16; *Maleon*,
 25, 2; *Lernell* (?) *d. l. Maulyon*, 24, 10. Mauléon *in the*
Basses Pyrenées can hardly be the place.
 Mayne, Earl of, Le Mans, 24, 4 (*note*); Mayns, 28, 28.
 Morteyne, Erle of, Mortain, *Normandy*, 24, 4; 43, 8;
 54, 11.
 Mounte Agnant, Andres de, Montaigu, ? *La Vendée*, 30, 24.
 Mounte Belliard, *Erle of*, Montbéliard, *Burgundy*, 60, 31;
Belliard, 105, 34.
 Mountford, Monfort-sur-Meu *near Rennes*, 50, 20; *Lorde*
Maunford, 143, 33; *Erle of Mountford*, 55, 24.
 Mounte Vyel, Gaciane of, Montreuil, 30, 22 (*note*).
 Namptes, Nantes, 110, 18.
 Northampton, Erle of, 77, 2.
 Oliver, *Herland's son*, 91, 7.
 Panell, La Haye-Pesnel, ? *Normandy*, 149, 12; *Guy Pamell*,
 116, 20.
 Patrices, 6, 14; 8, 27; 111, 15; *Ser' Patryke*, 115, 24; 117,
 8; *Patryk*, 117, 7.
 Peonny, John, *error for Panell*, 30, 20 (*note*).
 Peyters, Poitiers, 24, 8; *Petevynnes*, Poitevins, 25, 4.
 Poleyne, Poland, 57, 8.
 Pollides, *Ponthus' intimate and cousin*, 4, 4; 12, 31; 142, 11.
 Ponthus, *in Fr. usually, in Ger. always*, Pontus.
 Quyntyn, Monford, Breut de, ? 28, 16.
 Quynpartorentyn, *for Quimpercorentin, modern Quimper*.
St. Corentin is its patron, 31, 1.

- Rays, Gautier de, *perhaps* Rai-Aube, *Normandy*, 28, 15 ;
Aubry de, 30, 27.
 Ree, Ile of, *off La Rochelle*, 133, 12.
 Rey, Ryoude de, 30, 26 (*see Rays*),
 Reyns, Rennes, 41, 22.
 Richemound, Earl of, 95, 36 ; 136, 22 ; 141, 33.
 Rochell, La Rochelle, 133, 13.
 Roches, *see La Roche*.
 Sages, William du, ? 116, 19.
 Sainte Iames in Galice, 149, 6.
 Sainte Malo de l'Ysle, 70, 1. *Seyncte Malewe*, 24, 21, *possibly*
an error for the Point de S. Mathieu near Brest.
 Seynt Gyles, Barnaby de, S. Gilles-sur-Vie, *Vendée*, ? or S.
 Gildas, ? *Brittany*, 116, 13.
 Sidone, 15, 14 ; 16, 10 ; *Sidon*, 14, 1 ; *Sydon*, 12, 12 ; 15, 5 ;
Sydone, 56, 23 ; 57, 12. *In W*, Sydoine, *Fr. Sidoine*.
 Le Surdite de Droyte Voy, *Ponthus' nom de guerre in England*,
 72, 3 ; 104, 17 ; *Surdyte*, 73, 17 ; 78, 8. *Surdite*, 79, 28.
 Susteny, *forest of, probably an error for Sucinio on the Mor-*
bihan, 10, 5 (*see note*).
 Syen, Henry de, 116, 13.
 Sylle, *probably modern Sillé-le-Guillaume*, 24, 5 ; *Ranald de*,
 25, 14 (*see note*) ; 30, 22.
 Tenull, Roland de, *error for Chemillé*, ? 30, 23 (*see note*).
 Tesson, ? 116, 20 ; 149, 11, *possibly not a geographical name*.
 Tibeŕ, *king of Galicia*, 1, 4 ; Tyber, 3, 17. *Fr. Thibor ;*
Ger. Tiburt.
 Towards, Guy de, Thouars, 149, 16.
 Turnebeufe, *probably not a geographical name*, 30, 20.
 Valoynes, Bernard de, *perhaps Valognes in Normandy*, 28, 15
(but see note).
 Vennys, Vannes in *Brittany*, 10, 32, etc.
 Vettrey, Gerrard de, 139, 2 ; *Pers de Vettry*, 139, 2.
 Vitry, Edmund de, Vitré in *Maine*, ? 24, 30.
 Wales, *Earl of*, 83, 1.
 Welle of Aventures, 40, 12 ; *of Mervells*, 41, 33 ; 55, 32.
 Wylron, Lorde, *error for Villiers*, 30, 20.

GLOSSARY.

- Abowed, p. ptc. *bent, bowed*, 45, 9.
 Alblastars, *Arbalasters*, 83, 6.
 Ale, *ail*, p. ptc. *alyd*, 36, 25.
 Aloigne, Fr. *aloigner*, 63, 16.
 Alowed, p. ptc. *praised*, 30, 33. W, *praysed*; R, *eust grant loz*.
 Arased, p. ptc. *sprinkled*, 68, 10.
 Attempe, *tempt*, 64, 19.
 Aailed, *lowered* p. ptc., 10, 12.
 Avenaunt, *suitable*, 53, 21.
 Balengere, *a large row boat, etymologically, a whale-boat*, 2, 13;
 ballengers, 133, 23, etc.
 Batell, *a battalion*, 24, 28, etc., in b., in battle array, 27, 13.
 Bente, p. ptc. of bend, *bent, pitched* (of a tent), 41, 34.
 Beŕ, *a bier, or litter*; hors-beŕ, 50, 21.
 Boude, probably an error, *bow*, 42, 29.
 Celed, p. ptc. *hidden, concealed*, 93, 34.
 Chalanged, p. ptc. *opposed, refused*, 89, 29.
 Chaces, *coursing hounds*, ? Fr. *chasses*, 4, 13.
 Cherty, *affection*, 136, 30.
 Comon, vb. *associate*, 147, 11.
 Comoners, probably *participants* in a tournament from the vb.
 comon, but the notes suggest deliberate coinage from the
 vb. *come on*, 139, 4, 33.
 Cosen, *for chosen* p. ptc., 53, 24.
 Cowardyue, *cowardly*, 27, 20.
 Cronocles, *coronets*, 108, 10.
 Dawyng, n. *Dawn*, 3, 7.
 Demaundes, *questions*, 10, 21; 16, 11; 16, 22.
 Devise, *spy out*, 24, 25. R, *espier*.
 Discesed, *died*, 150, 9.
 Discolored, *blanched*, 67, 6.
 Dismated, *dismayed* p. ptc., 29, 17.

- Draght, *allurement, encouragement*, 75, 15 ; draghtes of loue, 34, 5.
 Drogman, *dragoman, interpreter*, 18, 24.
 Dunyon, *citadel, donjon* (fig. *protection*), 25, 21.
 Dystrakked, *distracted*, 129, 16.
 Enhautes, *exercises, follows*, 1, 20.
 Erst, *before*, W, 135, 16 (note), miswritten *herfte*, 67, 2.
 Farrome, a, *at a distance*, the weak dat. plu. of the adj. *feor*, 48, 31 ; farrom, 141, 15.
 Fiř-hows, *building where there is a fire, dwelling house*, 18, 29 ; also in W.
 Forfeted, p. ptc. *done amiss*, 65, 4.
 Fouuysch, *foolish*, 64, 1.
 Fylloy, *follow*, 39, 13.
 Gař, *make*, 77, 33.
 Garnysche, *provide, garrison*, 23, 23.
 Gaynstondyng, n. *opposition*, 3, 15.
 Gogle, *joggle, stagger*, 51, 11 ; gogylyng, 52, 18.
 Goweř, *a brooch*, ? 61, 12 (note).
 Grifyns, *falcons*, 4, 14.
 Gyrtelles, *for Kyrtelles*, 121, 27.
 H, initial, inorganic : harme, 28, 8 ; 29, 16 ; 68, 9 ; vn-h, 46, 16 ; helboys, 6, 5 ; herely, 5, 23 ; holde, 24, 27.
 Haviř, *Fr. avoir, possessions*, 144, 34.
 Labre, v. *labor*, 7, 1, etc.
 Langoure, *languish*, 68, 6.
 Laseř, *leisure*, 127, 34. Frequent in Barbour with this spelling.
 Lay, for Fr. *la* in proper names, 46, 8 ; 116, 15, 16 and 17.
 Lesse, *shorter*, 137, 22.
 Livelode, *patrimony*, 108, 30.
 Lovyng, *laudation*, 50, 7.
 Luges, *huts or tents*, 27, 9.
 Lugge, v. *lodge* Inf., 2, 24 ; p. ptc. *lugged*, 3, 2.
 Manhened, pret. *maimed*, 114, 29.
 May, for Fr. *ma*, *May dame*, 36, 32.

- Mokkyng, *mocking*, 12, 3.
 More, in the sense of *taller*, 48, 1.
 Neghtboures, *neighbors*, 23, 19; 81, 14.
 Nobylley, *nobility, splendor*, 53, 13.
 Norye, *foster-child or ward*, 13, 16.
 Pensy, *pensive*, 39, 27, etc.
 Pensýnes, *pensiveness*, 37, 4.
 Perchen, *to pierce*, p. ptc. *perched*, 44, 13; 84, 15, etc.
 Peyns, *garments?* or *plumes, tufts*, ? 82, 1 (note).
 Pris, n. *praise*, 31, 16.
 Proloyne, *absent itself*, 66, 30.
 Protestacion, *protestation, solemn assurance*, 63, 23.
 Refrete, *refrain*, 39, 29.
 Refuse, *avoid*, R, *refuser*, 7, 33; cf. Barbour (glossary).
 Reiose, in the sense of *enjoy*, 132, 7.
 Repenyd, p. ptc. *repined*, 46, 28.
 Rokkette, *a small crag*, 95, 4; W and R, *roche*.
 Serve, *deserve*, 17, 3.
 Skale, *to scale* (a wall, etc.), inf., 2, 27; *scaled*, p. ptc., 10, 23;
 94, 26.
 Somers, *sumpter beasts*, 97, 19.
 Strenghtes, *strong places*, 26, 30.
 Stuffe, v. *provision*; pt. *stuffyd*, 5, 23; 124, 24; 128, 8, etc.;
 frequent in Barbour.
 Subarbes, *suburbs*, 134, 10.
 Suyd, p. ptc. *issued*, 43, 11.
 Symphonys, *musical instrument*, 44, 1.
 Tempe, *tempt, try*, 35, 2; *pret.*, 124, 19.
 The, *for they*, 2, 26; 69, 14; 86, 23; 100, 17; 119, 11; 129,
 9; 130, 15; 135, 5.
 Titter, *sooner*, 130, 12.
 Topp, *top* (*nautical term*), 6, 19.
 Trast, *trust*, 107, 18; *pret.* *traysted*, 89, 9.
 Vndretaken, p. ptc. *surprised*; R, *seurpris*, 27, 14.
 Unnes, *with difficulty*, 67, 8; 103, 3.

Ure, *probably fortune, lot*, as frequently in Barbour, 131, 26 (note). The meaning *man*, A.S. *wer* suggested by the note is hardly possible.

Voward, *van-guard*, 25, 9.

Vyseŕ, *visour*, 21, 8, etc. ; vyssouŕ, 41, 29, etc., *a mask*.

Ware, for *vair, fur*, 141, 8.

Wate, lay in, 21, 15, *lay in wait*.

Warne, *direct, govern*, 96, 4.

Wordle, *for world*, 38, 31.

Wordly, 9, 30 ; 39, 30 ; 46, 29 ; 67, 16.

FRANK JEWETT MATHER, JR.

Now I wolde you tell a noble storye wherof a man
may leue many gode examples and yonge men may
here the gode order of Antient people that dre
miche gode and worship in their days how it
happened to the kyng wher of Quene that kyng
had to his wyf the kynges wyf of dragon a
fitt haly woman. So then had becom hym a sonne
that was called porthus the moste famous knyght
the moste braver that eu was seyn in that tyme of
kyng his fader was a fitt worthy man and a strong
In that tyme it happened in the yf that the Caradyn
of Babylon was of greet power of having moe of
famous wherof he admynd that the chert schuld have
the other three stay. Somer take ye noon hede to have
any of myn heritage for I wolde ordyn that wher of you shal have thirty y
men of Armes for the service of schal paye they fader for the yep this that
vede you shipping And all that you nedes to have And ewide of you three that
goe in his agentyng to conquer conquis and restles even the enten his schit
of you three that best dow and moste conquest and moste enmynted the lace of
Macedon schal be the best wherof was me And I schal yf to hym the moste
of my rader So the Goddyn ordyned his three sonnes and pease threym that
then nedes for to wep. Ewore the enten And then went to the see all thre to yene
W it happened as fortune wold that one of the childe of the Goddyn



come as the wynde arose hym and his men of ope compen
he passed Spayne in Justice and take londe myght to a yet litle that
was called Conleigne and went to londe in a balyng he and xxx men with hy
and toke of the people they aboute the londing and when he was who was
lode of that londe the answere and sayd that it was the freyne of Spayne
and that king they was king of that londe when they the londeyng some
what lare he he and then answered and sayd the lare of the ciste then
make he to ciste place his as that he would withspare him fro the ciste
and take two and twenty shyllyn and sent them to the porte of Conleigne
and charged them to make them as myshunders of cloth of gold of silke
of spices and that the shyllyn in the Spynnyng go into the toren and bygge
theyme with forty men of Armes with fadyons ande then yorned and in
the morow they that the shyllyn come from the walle at the water gate
that the shyllyn yete the gate and then shyllyn assey to ofale the chaff and
to come up into the toren and as the shyllyn it was so don so come
the xxiiy vessels and make them myshunders of spices and sold theys myshunders
goodly shype and assey that the forty men that they lugged in the toren as
they myght myght to the water gate the made they shyllyn to ete and myght with
theyme that noon myme shyllyn he theyght and when they had dyppoted theyme
then went and had take theys assey to be up on the gate on the Spynnyng
to go aboute and devyce they Spynnyng and when it come to the londe they
went down the chaff and at the londe home the some of the Spynnyng
that was called Spynnyng came to the poote of the water with a gate

[KING PONTIUS AND THE FAIR SIDONE,

NOW FIRST PRINTED FROM THE UNIQUE MS. DIGBY 185 IN
THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY.]

[**Cap. I.** Of kyng Tiber of Spayne and his sonne Pontus;
and how the Sawdeyn of Babilon sent his thre sonnes to
werre vpon the Cristen.]

[Fol. 166.] **N**¹OW I wolle you tell a noble storye, wherof a man may
lerne many goode ensamples, and yonge men may here
the goode dedes of aunciente people that dide muche goode and
worschip in their days—how itt happenyd to the kyng Tiber²
5 of Spayne. That kyng had to his wyf the kynges doghtre of
Aragon, a full holy womman. So thei had between theym a
sonne that was called Pontus, the moste famose childe & the
moste *gracious* that euer was seyn in that tyme. The kyng
his fadre was a full worthy man and debonere.

10 In that tyme itt happened in the Est that the sawdeyn of
Babilon was of gret power of havyng men of armes. So
he had fovy sonnes; wherthurgh he ordayned that the eldest
schuld haue his empire, and sayd to the othre thre, “Fair
sonnes, take ye noon hede to haue any of myn heritage, for I
15 wolle ordeyn that eueryche of you shall haue thirty M¹ men
of armes, for the whiche I schal paye thei^r sawde for thre yer^e,
and schall yeve you schippyng and all that you nedes to haue.
And eueryche of you thre schall goo in his aventure to con-
quer^e contrees and realmes vpon the Cristen; and which of you
20 thre that best doos and moste conquerys and moste enhauntes²
the lawe of Mahown schal be the best cheresyd with me, and

¹A handsome illuminated initial N, extending through twelve lines of text. See the description of the MS. and the facsimile page.

²*Enhauntes*, to exercise or follow, corresponds closely in meaning to *exaucera* of the French original. See Bradley-Stratmann for instances of this rare word.

I schal gyf to hym the moste of my goodes." So the sowdeyn ordayne his thre sonnes and yeave theym that thei nedyd for to weŕ vpon the Cristen. And thei went to the see all thre to gedre.

- 5 [Cap. II. How Brodas sonne to the Sawdeyn toke Couleigne and slewe the kyng Tiber; and how a Cristen knyght named Patrices saved Ponthus and the xiiij children in a schip.]

10 S¹O it happenyd as fortune wold, that oon of the childe of the sowdeyn come, as the wynde drove hym and his navye by gret tourment, that he passed Spayne in Galice, and toke londe nygh to a gret citee that was called Couleigne, and went to londe in a balangere, he and xxi men with hym, and toke of the people theŕ aboute the londyng. And when he
15 asked who was lorde of that londe, the[i] answeyrd and seyde that itt was the realme of Spayne and that kyng Tiber was kyng of that londe. Then asked the sowdeyn's sonne what lawe he held, and thei answeyrd and seyde, the lawe of Ihesu Criste.

Then made he to withdrawe his (navy),² as thogh he wold
20 withdrawe hym fro the contree, and toke two and twenty schippys and sent theym to the porte of Couleign and charged theyme to make theyme as marchaundes of cloth of gold, of silke, & of spices; and that thei schuld in the evynnyng goo into the town and lugge theyme with fovyrti men of armes,
25 with habyardions undre theiŕ govnes; and in the morow erly that the[i] schuld come vpon the walles at the water gate, & that thei schuld gete the gate, and thei schuld assey to skale the wall and to come vp into the tovne. And as they deuysid,³ itt was so doon.

¹This capital S extends through three lines of text; so, unless there is a note to the contrary, all initials marking chapter divisions.

²The scribe has apparently omitted *navy*, here added from W. The French has *Lors fist retraire son nauire*.

³MS. *deuydid*, a sheer blunder due to the ambiguous French verb. R, *Et ainsi comme il deuysa il fu fait*. W, and so as he had deuysed it, etc.

So come the xxij vesells and made theym marchaundes of
 Ciprice and sold theiȝ marchaundys goode chepe. And afre
 that, the fourty men that weȝ lugged in the toune as mar-
 chaundes, nygh to the water gate—thei made theiȝ hostys to
 5 ete and drynk with theym, that noon ingyne schuld be thoght.
 And when thei had disported theym, thei went and had take
 theiȝ avice to be vp on the gate on the dawying, to goo aboute
 and deuce theiȝ dooyng. And when itt come to the houre,
 thei went vpon the wall; and att the same houre, the sonne of
 10 the sawdeyn, that was called Brodas, come to the foote of the
 [*Fol. 166^b.] wall with a grete * navye¹ of ladders. And sume went on
 theym on hygh & thei that wer above pullyd up theym that
 weȝ benethe, so that within a while ther was a thosand or moo
 vpon the walles, and wanne the water gate, and so enteryd into
 15 the toune withouten ony gaynstandyng. And thei made gret
 martirdome of the people, and forwith thei assailed the castell
 in the which the kyng Tyber was, and thei toke hym by
 strenght, not withstandyng the kyng defendid hym and wold
 not be taken, and so he was slayn.

20 And the quene went oute prively into the wodes. And
 the kynges sonne Pontus, and xiiij childre whiche was
 lordes sonnes, and a goode preste that toke theym,² went out
 prively and hidde theym in a roche in a garthyn; and theȝ
 thei weȝ twoo days withoute mete or drynke. And the goode
 25 preste which was called Dampdenis had so grete drede, when
 the childeryn wold goon oute of the cave, he wenyd to haue
 died for theym; and seyde, “Goo ye not oute bot if ye wolle
 dye.” So he keypyd theym twoo days therin. Bot on the third
 day Pontus sayd to his maistre, “Itt is bettre to dye on the
 30 swerd then forto dye with hungre, for then we schal be cause
 of ouȝ own dethe; and if we goo oute, we may by the grace of

¹ Some word representing the *nombre* of W and R, or the *foueson* of H & F would be more natural. I have let *navye* stand in the text in the sense of a ship, because I have no emendation probable on palaeographical grounds.

² MS. *theym and*. See note.

Gode happely fynde sume remedye." And the goode preste sayd he hade leueſ dye for hungre then goo into theiſ handes, and tremelyd grettly for fere.

- Bot fers¹ Ponthus and his cosyn german Pollides and all the
 5 othre lepe oute of the roche, and anoon thei weſ aspyed and all taken, and ledde to the toune to the kyng Brodas, that made hym selve kyng of the londe. And when the kyng sawe the thirten childre, thei semed to hym ryght faiſ. So he asked whoes childre thei weſ. And Ponthus answerd and seyde thei
 10 weſ childre whiche the kyng norisched for the loue of Gode and for theyſ service when thei schuld be men. "And of what seruice?" said the kyng Brodas. "Ser," said the childre, "some to kepe his grehoundes and his chaces, and sume to kepe havkes of the toure, and sume to kepe grifyns, and othre to
 15 doo seruice in hall and in chaumbre." "What!" seyde the kyng Brodas, "Clothed he his seruauantes so worthely as ye bee?—for by youſ clothes that ye were, ye semen to be grete lordes sonnes." "Ser," said Ponthus, "we be the childre bot of small gentylmen." "By hym that I serue," said the kyng,
 20 "I can not see what ye be, bot of beaute and of faiſ speche thou feylest non; bot ye muste lef your lawe that is noght worth and take the lawe that we leve on, and I schal doo you muche goode; and if ye wolle not, I schal make you for to dye: and so chese you whethre that ye wolle." "Truly," said
 25 Ponthus, "of the dethe ye may wele ordayn to youſ plesir, bot for to leve oure lawe and to take youres—we wolle not for to dye therfore." "No!" said the kyng, "Then shall ye dye an evyll dethe."

- And then come a knyght Cristen, that had taken theiſ lawe
 30 for drede of dethe, the whiche all way had his hertt and thoght vnto Ihesu Criste, the whiche the kyng loved myche, and sayd vnto the kyng, "Delieuſ theym to me, for if they wolle not beleue vpon ouſ lawe, I schal ordayn in suche wyse that thei

¹Adverbial for *fersly*. R, *Et au fort Pontus sailli*. . . . H, *Mais en la fin*. W, shows a similar mistranslation: *and by strengthe Ponthus sterte out of the caue*.

schal neuer doo harme vnto your lawe." "I pray you," sayd the kyng, "and I yeve theym vnto your gouernaunce." Then trowed Pontus and his fellowes to be deid. The knyght led theym to his hous and manasshed theym sore before the Sarasyns; and when the Sarasyns wer withdrawn, he said to assey
 5 theym, "Ye muste beleve on Mahounde, * or elles ye muste dye." And thei answeyrd thei wold not, bot rather to dye. And when he sawe theym so stedfaste, he had gret ioy in his hert and he asked theym if thei had oght etyn of late tyme.
 10 And thei sayd, "Not thes thre days haue we nawthe ete ne dronke." Then he made theym to ete and drynke. And as thei ete oon of theym sayd to his fellowes, "Wherfor ete we, when we schal dye anon?" "Say ye not so," quod Pontus, "in the grace of our Lorde ben mony remedies. If itt like
 15 hym, we schal leve; if it like hym, we schal dye; for all lieth in hym. So lete vs have good hope in hym, and he wolle save vs." And so thei ete and prayd to Gode to have mercy on theym.

The knyght herd what Pontus sayd and prased hym muche
 20 in his hertt, and seyde, "Itt wer to gret pitee to lete so fayr childre dye." And so he went fro theym and soght a schipp, and by nyght stuffyd itt with vitell for a monethe, and herely in the morowe he ledd the childre to schipp, and putt therin a schipman with theym that was a *Cristin* man, and putt theym
 25 in the bothome of the schipp; and when the childre wer in the bothome of the schipp, thei pulled vp the sale, and the schipp saled into the hygh see. Then the schippman come vp fro benethe and toke the gouernaill of the schipp and asked theym whedir thei wold goo. Then Pontus said, "Syth Gode
 30 has sent you vnto vs, fair frende, lede vs to the coste of Fraunce." And he said he wold, and bad theym not be ferd ne dredand, for thei had vitell enogh for a monethe; and told theym how the knyght had putt them¹ in the bothome

¹ W and R have *hym* and *lui*, a far better reading. But the repeated, therefore consistent, blunder may be the translator's. See l. 24 f. and p. 6, l. 1.

of the schipp and the vitell with theym by nyght. Then sayd Ponthus, "Faiſ Seris, knele we all down and thanke we Gode of the grete goodnes that he hath sent to vs, and pray we all to be to his plesaunce." So did the children nyght
 5 and day vpon theiſ knees and helboys, praying to Gode full devoutly, and (had) alonely theiſ truste and stedfaste beleve in almyghty Gode.

[**Cap. III.** How the kyng Brodas dremed that Ponthus become a lion and devouryd hym; how Patrices councelled
 10 hym to lete the Cristen people yeld tribute; and how Patrices delyuered from prison the Erle of Desttrue.]

SO lete we lefe of the fowrten childe and retourne to the knyght that putt theym into the schipp. The knyght was called Patrices, and he went and told the kyng how he
 15 had venged hym vpon the xiiij childe that wold not beleve on Mahounde. "How have ye doon?" sayd the kyng. "Ser," said the knyght, "ye schal neuer see theym, for I haue putt theym in a faiſ schipp full of holles, withouten vitell, and lete drawe vp the sale to the topp, that broght theym into the hygh
 20 see. Have no drede, for ye schal neuer see theym."

"I wolle wele," said the kyng, "for I haue dremed this nyght that I sawe the xiiij children in a wodde, and that the faiſ childe that speke to me become a lion and devouryd me and hurte me in suche wyse that I dyed. So I haue be sore affrayd
 25 in my slepe." "Ser," sayd the knyght, "itt is bot a dreme and malyncoly. Of theym ye be quytt." "I wolle wele," said the kyng.

Then said the knyght, "By Mahounde Ser, me aght to counsell you truly to my power, if itt like you, that no man be
 30 putt to dethe, bot if he stonde at defence; for ye have a faiſ conquest. For men sayn in scorn, that as mytch is a mylne worthe that gryndyth not as an oven that baketh not. Now lete euery man beleve on that lawe that he wolle; and that all the strenghtes & contres come to youſ obesaunce and to

[*Fol. 167^b.] yeld you tribute; * and lette theym leue and labre, and ye schal be as ryche as ye wold be." Then said the kyng, "By Mahounde ye counsell vs truly. Goo ye and so serche prisoners; and thei that wolle beleve vpon ou^r lawe—thei schall
 5 be worschipped with vs, and we schall yeve theym of oures; and thei that wolle not, shal be^r tribute to vs aftre thei^r power; and we putt all the gouernaunce of ou^r law in you." So was the knyght charged *with* the gouernaunce of the prisoners and of the contre.

10 And the knyght, whiche was a worthye man and that took noon hede bot forto save the Cristen people at his power, went aboute to take oute prisoners and to putt theym to a lyght ravnson. Among all othre prisoners he founde the kynges brothre of Spayne, that was Erle of Destruie, that was sore
 15 wounded with two woundes; and when that the knyght knew that he was the kynges brothre of Spayne, he toke hym by the honde and led hym aloone into a chaumbre and said to hym, "Ser, I wote ye be the kynges brothre. Ye haue gret desi^r to save the countree and the people that ben fallen to
 20 gret myschief into the tyme that Ihesu Criste putt remedye therin. I sey to you in goode feith secretly that I schal putt the best remedye thurgh you^r goode counsell that I can putt therin." Then the Erle had gret ioye to he^r hym speke of Ihesu Criste, and said that he knew wele that he wold the
 25 welfair of the Cristen people and said full sore syghyng,

[Cap. IIII. How by the counsell of the knyght Patrices the Erle of Destruie feynyd hym a Saresyn vnto the tyme that Pontius schuld relefe the contree; and how thei made all the contree tributorie to the kyng Brodas.]

30 "Ryght swete Ser, I wote not whethi^r ye say thus to assey me, bot wold Gode that you^r hertt we^r as you^r movthe says." Then said Patrices and told how he was take in the batell, and forto refuse the dethe and for the welefa^r of the prisoners of the batell and of all Cristen, he become

Saresyn, bot his hertt was all wey to Gode. And told hym how he sayd the xiiij children, and how he made that the kyng putt noon of theym to dethe, and that euery man schuld hold his own lawe and beŕ to hym tribute and seruage,
 5 and how he hade doon this vnto the tyme that Gode wolde putt sume remedye therin, and how he was charged to raunson the prisoners. And then the Erle fell down vpon his kneys and gafē thonkyng vnto Gode, wepyng. Then the knyght toke hym vp and thei kyssed to gedre and thonked
 10 Gode.

And when thei had wepyd envgh for pite, thei said that Gode had semelyd theym to doo sume goode to the people that weŕ in poynte to be distroed. Then said Patrices, "Faiŕ Ser, yitt I hope to Gode that he wole haue mercy vpon the
 15 contree and his people, & I pray you to feyne you a Saresyn as I doo, and the kyng wolle haue of you gret ioye, and so by the grace of Gode we schall putt suche ordinaunce that schal be profittable for to abyde the grace of Gode. And I say to you as myn hertt says to me, that the childe that I haue
 20 sayd schal relefe the contree—and in maner the kyng hath tolde me in a dreame, how that he dreamed of the xiiij children, and how that the grettest become a lion and devoured the kyng." Then said the Erle, "I reioyse in myn hertt, for he is my newew and my Gode son—Gode gyde hym." Then thei
 25 sweŕ to hold companye to gedre—in goode and in evyll to enduŕ. And so thei toke theiŕ avice to gedre.

Then Patrices went to the kyng and said, "Ser, ye ought to thonke Mahounde, for I haue conuerted the kynges brothiŕ of this contree, that is the Erle of Destrue; and so by litle
 30 and litle he schal helpe to encrease the lawe of Mahounde and he schal make you to haue grete tributes and grete wynnyng of the contree; and he and I schal ride into the contree to
 [*Fol. 168.] cites and townes; and thei that wolle * obey schal be cheresed, and thei that wolle not sall be punyshed."

35 The kyng hade gret ioye and made the kynges brothre to come before hym; and so thei accorded that thei schuld ride

with the kyng into the contree. And so the kyng roode from
toun to toun with thirtee thovsant men of armys; and so
thei made all the contree tributorie to the kyng.

So itt happened aftre mony *mervelles* and pestilence[s] in
5 the contree. So forto passe ouer the matier, the kyng reigned
xv¹ yer as by a vengeance of Gode, and aftre the londe was
relevyd agan.

Now lete we retorne to the children that we in the see full
sorye and full dredfull of thei live.

- 10 [Cap. V. How Pontius and the xiiij children arived in Litle
Bretayn and Herland the senyschall broght theym to the
kyng Huguell that lete norysh and teche theym. How
Herland governed Pontius. Of the grete speche of the
goodlyhede of Pontius. And how Sydon the kynges
15 doghtre desired in hir hert to se hym.]

Bot fortune that was *mervellous* led theym to the contre
of Armoric, which be called now Litle Bretayn. So
was the wynde strong and the tourment of the see that made
theym to arive vpon a roche ayeinst a forest. And as Gode
20 wold, the mast fell betwen twoo roches; and so thei lepe vp and
savyd theym selve vpon the roches *eueryche* of theym. And
when thei we vpon the roche, thei held vp thei hondes and
thonked Gode of his grace and said that Gode forgetteth not
his *seruauntz*, bot he sendes theym socour.

- 25 N²[ow] that tyme reigned in Litle Bretayne kyng Huguell,
a worthie man and a true, bot he was olde and he had bot oon
doghtre a live of all the children that he hade by hys wyfe, the
whiche was sustre to the kyng of Normandie. This doghtre
was the fairest, most curtes, and devoute that myght be founde
30 in anye contre. Sche was the most wordly³ ioye that hi fadre

¹ MS. *xv as*. *As* cancelled by the rubricator.

² The *N* in this text is very like a large & in form, but neither W nor R
has an &, while such a reading would be awkward.

³ A characteristic spelling for *worldly* which I have retained here and else-
where, see glossary.

hade, and comforth and chere. Was no feste bot hiȝ beautie and hiȝ wommanhode was spoken of.

So it happed that Herlande that was senyschall of Bretayn, a full goode knyght and a trew,¹ was gouernouȝ of
 5 Bretayn, and he hunted that day in the forest of Susteny. And, as (of) aventuȝ, an hertt went to the water nygh to the roche theȝ the children weȝ. So Herlande loked vp and beheld the children vpon the roche. Then he come toward theym and asked theym what thei weȝ. Thei answerd and
 10 said thei weȝ aventured in the see. Then the seneschall smot his hors with his spurris and come to theym, for the see was availed and withdrawn—then the hors went vp to the belly in the see—and made theym to lepe vp be hynd hym and his knyghtes and his esquiers, and broght theym to the londe.

15 Then he asked theym of what lande thei weȝ. And thei said thei weȝ of the kyngdome of Spayne. Then said oon called Viceat, “Ser, Loo her Ponthus! that is the kynges son, and theȝ Pollides his cosyn german, and thes othre ben barouns sonnes of Spayne.” And when that Herland herd that Pon-
 20 thus was the kynges son, he made hym goode cheȝ and did hym grete honour, and asked of hym demaundes. And the childe that was full wyse answeryd hym full wysely and told hym how that Brodas the Sowdeyn son hade scaled Coleigne and sloy his fadre and toke the contre; and how thei weȝ taken
 25 and putt into a schipp, and all the maner as ye haue herd afore. And when the Senyschall herde the sorow of the roalme of Spayne, he hade grete pitee of the kyng and of the realme of Spayne that any suche (folke) schuld haue dominacion of the Cristen.

30 So then he made hym lepe vp behinde hym—and he toke Ponthus and his cosyn horsse to ride aloone²—and led hym to
 [*Fol. 168^b.] Vennys theȝ as the kyng was. * And when the kyng sawe and hade herd of the kynges dethe of Spayne, he was full sory

¹ ms. *trew that was*, etc. I amend by omitting *that*, following R. *Si aduint que herlant . . . estoit tout gouverneur de bretagne et chassoit celle iournee*, etc.

² See the note on this apparently contradictory passage.

and hade grete pitee on the contree and wepyd, for he loved myche the kyng of Spayne, and said that he had doon myche goode and gotten grete worschip vpon the partes of Spayne wher as he had ben in werre ayenst the Saresyns, in the company of the kyng of Fraunce. "And I say," quod the kyng, "itt is grete hyrt to all Cristendome of the dethe of the kyng, for he was a full goode knyght and a worthie; and as to vs Bretaynes, we haue more harme than any othir nacion, for we sent thedir to chaunge our whete with their goode wyne, and so we haue lost mytch more than othir men. Bot Gode of his grace deliuer the contre of that fals lawe, and I thonke Godde that he has sent me the kynges sone and the children of the barounes, for I schal lete norish theym and teche theym as I wold myn awn. Then he called to hym the senyschall and betoke Pontius to hym, and to diuerse of his contre he betoke the remeynaut. And so he departed theyme¹ into the ende of iij yers and charged theyme to teche theyme wele in havkyng and huntynge—in all maner of disportes.

So were the xiiij children departed, as ye haue herd, to the barounes of the contre. And Herland gouerned Pontius and he lered hym all maner of disportes—hawkyng, huntynge, playng at the chesse, daunsyng, and synghyng. Myche was the worschip thurgh oute all Bretayn that sprong of the grete beautie, governaunce, and curtesie of Pontius; and thei spake of hym both farre and neer. And aboue all thing he loued God and the chirche, and his first ocupacion in the morowe was to wesch his hondes, to say his prayers, and to heer his messe full devoutely, and wold neuer ete ne drynke vnto the tyme that he had his prayers all said. And of suche as he hade, he wold gyf to the poer men prively parte. And he wold neuer sweer grete othe bot "Truly" and "As God me helpe." And he wold be as glade when he loste and when he wan; if any man dide hym wrong, he wold sey att few wordes in faire maner that he had

¹ MS. *thenne*. Clearly a scribal blunder for *theym*. A form *theime*, on the analogy of *thei*, would be better palaeographically, but is found nowhere in the MS. N, *And so departed he theym*. R, *Et ainsi les departi*.

- wrong, and he wold yeve upp his gamme in faire maneŕ rather or he wold strive ; and no man couth make hym wroth in his playng. And he lovyd neuer mokkyng ne scornynge. And if any man speke of any vices or harme by man or womman, he
 5 wold breke his taylor. And he wold neuer play at gamme that was hurt or angre to any man, for he was the best taght that any man sen in any place, and the best and the fairest schapen in his live dayes. He semed like an aungell. The more that a man beheld hym the better hym schuld like hym.
- 10 Ther was no speche bot of hym, in so myche that the reporte of his goodelyhede and of his semelenes was myche spoken of in the kynges courte. Sydon the kynges doghtre herd so myche worschip spoken by Ponthus that she had grete desiŕ in hiŕ hertt to se hym ; and sche was hold the fairest, the comeliest,
 15 the most womanly in all Fraunce or Bretayn, and best couthe behaue hiŕ in presence of all maneŕ of people, both of high degre and of lowe degre.

- [**Cap. VI.** Of the grete feste at Vennys ; and how Sydon bad Herland bryng hir Ponthus, that was his norie, and he
 20 broght hir first Pollides for drede of evyll speche ; and when Ponthus was broght, Sydon began for to loue hym, withouten any poynt of velanye, and chose hym as for hir knyght. How tithynges come that the Saresyns wer landed in the Ile of Breste.]

- 25 **A**ftre itt happed that the terme of iij yeres was comen vp, and that the kyng helde a grete feste in the Whisson tyde at Vennys ; and he sent govnes of oon suyte to the xiiij children ; and sent to theym that thei schuld come to the feste ; and eueryche baron schuld bryng his childe. And
 30 Herland broght Ponthus, and the Lorde de La Vale broght his cosyn german Pollides that was most faiŕ, most goodely,
 [*Fol. 169.] and best in behavyng* of theym all except Ponthus.

When Ponthus was comen euery man beheld hym. And when the kyng sawe hym, he had gret ioye and praid to Gode

to save hym and to send hym myche worschipp, and said that he schuld serve hym of his copp at the feste.

The kyng made his fest with his barones and his knyghtes in oon parte¹ and his doghtre in an othir parte. Grete was
 5 the feste and the ioye and the grete sportes. Sydon, that herd the grete speche of the beautie that was in Pontus and of his demeynyng, sche was day and nyght in grete thoght how sche myght fynd an way, with hir worschipp, to speke with hym—for drede myche of speche of menn. And when sche had
 10 thoght envgh, sche sent for Herlande the senyschall; and when he was comen, sche gave hym a right fair palfrey, and sche made hym ryght grete cher. Herland mervellyd of the grete cher, bethynkyng hym what sche mente, and doubted; and aftre werd sche said all, “Ay, fair Senysshall,
 15 fair and swete frende, we pray you that we myght see your norye Pontus, that is wele taght and right wyse, as men sayne; I pray you bryng vs hym this nyght that we may see hym, for men sayne that he can daunce and syng.” “Ma dame,” said the senysshall, “I schal bryng hym to you, sith
 20 that itt like you that I doo soo.” “Then goo,” seid sche, “and I schall see if he [be] suche oon as men sayne, or not.”

The senysshall toke his leve and wente on his wey. He was a full goode knyght, wyse and redie, and wente thynkyng that the goode cher that he hade was for the love of Pontus.
 25 And so he was troubeled in his thoght and said to hym selfe, “Ay Sainte Marie, if I schuld bryng Pontus, he is so fair, if this woman sawe hym, sche myght be so take with love that sche wold haue noon othe bot hym; and sche myght schew to hym suche love as sche myght (be) perceyved; wherthurgh
 30 she myght haue blame, and the child loste, by envy. I wot not what to doo.” So he then thoght that he wold bryng his cosyn german in stede of hym, for mony causes, and for he doubted myche the kyng, and for drede that any harme schuld fall therby. He come agayne and broght Pollides with hym.

¹The word is entered over the line.

Sidon went into hiȝ warderop and sche made [come] a
 damesell named Ellious, the whiche sche loved myche and
 trusted vnto more than to any othiȝ, and she said to hiȝ that
 she hade grete desiȝ to se the faiȝ childe Ponthus, of whome
 5 all men spake. So sche had a litle wyndowe wheratt sche
 looked oute ofte tymes, if any thyng come that wey; and so
 she called Elious to se that all hiȝ aray weȝ wele dressed
 vpon. So att the laste, as thei looked, thei sawe comyng the
 senysshall and Pollides that was ryght faiȝ and goodely. And
 10 so she come down into the chaumbre and made grete cheȝ and
 ioy, and toke Pollides by the honde and wold haue made hym
 to sytt doune by hiȝ. And Pollides said, "Ma dame, I wolle
 not sitt doune by you, for itt is no reason." "Truly," she
 said, "itt is reason. Ye be a kynges son." "Ma dame," said
 15 he, "that be I not, bot I am his cosyn german." "Ay," said
 she, "I went that ye hade ben he." So she made hym as
 faiȝ cheȝ as she myght. Not withstanding, she was wrothe
 and said to the senysshall, "Iape ye with me?" "How
 Madame?" said he. "Ye schuld haue broght the kynges
 20 sone of Spayne," said she, "and ye haue broght his cosyn
 german. Wherefore dide ye so? Hold ye me such a foell."

Then the knyght kneled doune and said, "Ma dame, I crie
 [*Fol. 169^b.] you mercy, and be * ye not displeased, for in goode faithe I
 thought bot wele; for I myght not at that tyme bryng hym,
 25 for he served the kyng of his copp." "Yitt," said she, "ye
 schuld vndirstonde wele not to bryng me oon othre in stede
 of hym. Ye doute of me. I am not now so yong bot that I
 wold kepe my worshipp." "Itt is no doute Ma dame," said
 the senysshall. "I thynk bot wele; bot I doute my lorde youȝ
 30 fadre that loves you so myche—for if ye make hym a litle
 more chere than any othre, men wold haue envy of hym—
 and leste any evyll myght come therof, for the worlde is full
 evyll; for where that ye thinke bot goode and worshipp, yitt
 thei thynke othre wyse." "Ay," said she, "Ser, thinke ye no
 35 doute, for I hade leveȝ be deid than any myght reproche me
 or my worshipp for any thyng—be right sure." "Ma dame,

Gode wold that euery man wold as wele as I, for I wold you^r worshipp and welefaⁱr as wele as any man on live; and sith ye wolle, I schall bring hym." "I pray you," said sche, "and tary not long."

- 5 The senysshall went his way to fetche hym. Sydon went into hi^r warderopp to loke att the wyndowe, if she myght se hym come. So she said to Ellyous here best beloved damesell, "Yeve me my myrrour and se that I be wele." "Sothely Ma dame," she said, "ye be ryght wele." Then said she, "Loke
10 ye if that he come." And so thei loked ofte, if thei myght se hym comyng. So att the laste Ellyous went rynnnyng to hi^r ladie and said, "Ma dame, se ye whe^r he cometh, the fairest of the worlde."

- And Sidone lepe vpp and come rynnnyng, and sawe hym
15 come, and the senysshall with hym. So she sawe hym faⁱr, sanguyn, broune, and high—of faⁱr stature, so that she hade of hym grete mervell. Then she said to Ellyous, "Damesell, me semys he is mervellous faⁱr." "Ma dame," said Ellious, "he is no man—he is an aungell. I sawe neuer so faⁱr an
20 erthely creatu^r. Gode made hym with his aun hondes." "By my faith," said Sidon, "ye say verray trauth. I trowe she that be take with his love be fortunate." And so she went doune into hi^r chaumbre to hi^r ladies and gentylwomen. And anoon aftre, Pontus and the senysshall come vpp into the
25 chaumbre; and so Pontus went forth toward Sidon with full lowe curtesie, saluyng hi^r and hi^r ladies. So Sidone toke hym by the honde and welcomed hym goodely and praid hym to sytt doune by hi^r. And he said, "Ma dame itt is not for me to doo so." So thei made grete curtesye. Then said she,
30 "Wherfore make ye all this curtesie? Be not ye the kynges son of Spayne?" "Yis, Ma dame," said Pontus, "bot yitt I be not like you, for ye be doghtre to a grete kyng and a myghty, and I be a kynges son disheret; and so I haue nought bot by the goodeness of my lorde your fadre, that so myche
35 goode has doon to me." "Ay, Pontus," said she, "leve these¹

¹ MS. *there*.

wordes, for Gode has not made you suche as nature schewys you, bot forto doo for you; ¹ for ye be made and fouremed to haue as myche worschipp and goode, and more, then euer you^r fadre had—the which Gode sende you.” “Ma dame, I am
 5 not in that way, bot in the mercy of Gode is all.”

“Now sytt ye,” said she, “I you pray and commaunde.” So he satt a litle benethe hi^r. Then said she to the ladys, “I pray you of sume disportes to the senysshall and to the knyght, and that we may he^r Ponthus syng and se hym
 10 daunce.” And Sidone, that myche desired to talke with Ponthus, putt hym in demaundes of mony thinges. So she thocht hym passyng wyse of his age. Among all othre thinges she said, “Ponthus ye haue bene long tyme in Bretayn withoute seying of vs.” “Ma dame, I be in gouernaunce and so me
 15 oght to obey.” “Itt is reason,” said she, “bot I demaunde
 [*Fol. 170.] you, haue ye envy to see vs and ou^r ladies * that be here?” “Ma dame, nay for sothe, for here is a full fei^r company to see.” “I you demaunde,” said she, “haue ye any wyll to any ladie or gentylwoman, to be hi^r knyght?” “For sothe Ma dame, nay; for the seruice of me is bot litle worthe.” “Pon-
 20 thus,” said she, “save your grace, ye be of the place to be of worschipp to serve the grettest ladye and the fairest of all Bretayne.” So thei hade enough of diuers demaundes between theym, in so myche that she said, “I wolle that ye take the state of knighthod, and that ye be hold as for my knyght.
 25 And when I here that ye doo you^r selve worshipp, I wolle haue ioy of you.” “Ma dame,” said he, “Gode thonke you and Gode send me grace to doo that may please you and all your ladys, for the dedes of a poue^r man be litle worthe.” “Yitt,” said sche, “I wolle wele that ye wytt how that I
 30 holde you as for my knyght, and when that ye doo bettre then any of my knyghtes, I shall loue you for the beste, and ye schal wante no thing that I haue; and I wolde that ye made surement to serue me aboue all othre, in worschipp;

¹ “To aid you”—R, *Dieu ne vous a pas fait . . . pour vous deffaïre*. W, *for to vnmake you*.

and thinke ye not bot that I thinke worschip." "Ay, Ma dame, I thonke you of the grete worshipp that ye offre to me as myche as I may. Gode yeve me grace to serve itt vnto your worthynges." "I shall say you," said she, "that I wolle
 5 loue you as my knyght, and that ye be of suche maneir that I may perceyve that ye thinke noon othere wyse bot forto kepe the state and the worshipp of me; and if ye thinke any velanye, I shall neuer loue you." "Ma dame, I hade leueir be dede than to thinke any thyng that shuld turne to your diswor-
 10 shipp or to my lorde your fadir¹ dishonour." "Then wolle ye promys me, so as ye be a kynges son?" "Yea Ma² dame, by my feyth," seide he. Then she yeave hym a ryng with a diamounde and she said that he schuld bere that for the loue of hir. "Ma dame," said he, "Gode thonke you." So he toke
 15 itt and putt itt vpon his fingre.

And aftre that, she lede hym to daunce, and aftre sche praid hym to syng. And so he dide hir commaundement, as he that felyd hym self take with loue. So he song so goode and so swete a song that it was mervellous to her. Then he was loked
 20 vpon with ladies and gentylwomen and gretely praised. And then eueryche of theym disired in their hert the felischipp of hym and said omong theym, she was full happy that hym list forto loue and cherys. And aftre that thei hade daunced, thei come furth spices and wyn; and so Sidon yeave to the senys-
 25 shall a copp of golde full of wyn, and the senysshall thonked hir myche. And when thei hade wele disported theym, the senysshall said, "Ma dame, we beseche you of leve, for itt is tyme that we goo to the kyng." So she yeave theym leve, and she prayd the senysshall that he shuld come ofte and se hir,
 30 and he said that he schuld. So she and Pontius loked full amerously at their departyng, bot she keped hir as coverte as she myght.

¹ The flourish of the *r* is bolder than usual. It possibly represents an *cs*. I have preferred to regard *fadir* as the old Gen.

² MS. *my dame*.

And when thei weſ goon, ſhe asked of the ladies, “How ſay ye of Ponthus?” Theſ was noon bot thei praſed hym gretly; and theſ was ſume ſaid that ſhe was right happy that myght haue ſuche oon to hiſ loue. She myght wele ſay ſhe had the
 5 faireſt and the flouſ of the worlde. So the ladys *prayed* gretly Ponthus and that was grete ioy and comforth vnto Sidone to here, if ſhe durſte ſay bot litle, bot that ſche ſaid he was faiſ enough, and *prayd* to Gode to kepe hym from all evyll tungenſ.

10 The feſte dured thre dayſ with grete ioy and welfaiſ and all maner of diſſportes. So itt happened theſ come *mervelous* tithynges, that ſaid that the Saresyns weſ londed in the Ile of Breſte and were mo then twenty thovſand. So the courte was gretly trovbelyd, ſo that thei couth make noo cheſ.

15 [**Cap. VII.** How tithynges come to the kyng of Bretayn that the Saresyns were come in to hiſ lond; how Ponthus answered the Saresyn that ſaid that hiſ lawe was better then the Criſten; and how the kyng made Ponthus knyght.]

20 [**Fol. 170^b.*] **A**boute the myddes of the day theſ come furth a knyght and twoo * ſquyers Saresyns in meſſage fro the kyng Carodas that was ſonne to the ſawdeyn, oon of the iij ſonnes that ye herde of before. The knyght was huge and grete, ſtronge and horrible to ſe. A drogman he made to ſay, and
 25 ſaid on highe, that the ſon of the ſawdeyn was comen into the contree to do a wey the Criſten lawe and to pupliſch the lawe of Mahounde; and badd the kyng of Bretayn to forſake the Criſten lawe and take hym vnto the lawe of Mahounde; and to haue tribute of hym and of euery fiſ-hows in hiſ realme;
 30 and if he wold not, he wold diſtroy all Bretayn and putt all to the ſwerde.

The kyng herde the manaſhyng and grete pride of theym. He wyſte not what to ſayn and ſaid no worde.

Then looked vpp Pontius and saw that noo man spake noo worde. He lepe furth and said, "I am a simple child, I wolle not soffre hym to dispyse ouȝ holy lawe afore me." And so he knelyd doune before the kyng and asked leue to answer the
 5 Saresyn. The kyng *graunted* hym, when he sawe noon other wold speke. Then said he to the knyght Saresyn, "I shall answer the, and say, that youȝ lawe is bot temptacion and dampnacion, and live of the fire euer lastyng, and ouȝ lawe is helthe and saluacion and ioy that shal endure; and as to yeld tribute
 10 to you, we be free, and suche *seruege* shall we neuer doo to you, by the grace of Almyghty Gode."

Then said the Saresyn knyght, "Be theȝ any too men that wolle fyght ayeinst me, that Mahounde is not grettre then youȝ lorde Ihesu Criste?" Then answeryd Pontius, "If it please
 15 Gode, we wolle not putt too ayeinst the. I am yonge and feble, I caste myn hodde to a wedde for to defende thes wordes befor the kyng." And the Saresyn stode vpp and said, "Undirstonde that I wolle fyght with the and oon other." "I aske bot my self," said Pontius. The kyng and the Barounes weȝ
 20 wrothe that Pontius had waged batell with the Saresyn and that he had caste doune his wedde; bot it wolde not be amended.

Then said the kyng, "Ay Pontius, ye haue putt vs in grete disease of hert, that ye haue ben so hasty to cast doune youȝ wedde—ye that be so yong—ayeinst yonde knyght, that be so
 25 stronge and myghty." "*Ser*," said Pontius, "knowe not ye that at the request of Daniel, that was bot a child, thurgh whome¹ Gode savyd Susanne? Mervell ye not of the meruelles of Gode. Whome Gode wolle haue keped, shal be keped. I hold me sure and hardy ayeinst hym. Doute ye not of me."
 30 When the kyng herd hym thus speke, he weped, when he consideryd the goodnes and the hardenes of hym; and for the

¹ The omission of *thurgh whome* would set the sentence straight, but there is no reason to suspect scribal corruption in this case. Inconsequent constructions are so common in this text that I shall never indicate them, except where a probability of scribal error justifies emendation.

pitee that he hade of the childe, he besoght Gode full humbly with all his herte to helpe hym att the iorney.

"Ser," said Ponthus, "make ye me knyght and yeve me armore, and I shal goo and doo my devir." The kyng maked
 5 hym knyght, and girde hym with a sworde, and kyssed hym & he weped sore, that he myght not speke oon worde; and then he lete arme hym with the beste armour that he hade, and yeave hym the best stede that he hade; and when he was armed and on hors bakk, he was so faiȝ to se, and satt so
 10 streght and so wele vpon his hors, that it was grete ioy to see hym. And his xij fellowes weped for pite and for fere of hym; and Herland the senysshall was full sory; and so was all maner of people sory and wrothe, that he that was so yonge shuld fyght with oon that was so strong; for men
 15 said that he was the myghtehyst and the hardeyst among all the Saresyns.

Grete was the speche of Ponthus that he wolde fyght: in so myche that worde come to Sidone. It is not to be demaunded
 *Fol. 171.] whethre that she made any sorow or hevynes for * hiȝ knyght.
 20 She sent hym a kerchief to beȝ on his speȝ; and when he sawe itt, he reioysed hym in his hertt and thonked hiȝ; and she went prively into hiȝ warderopp and said hiȝ prayers for him devoutley.

[Cap. VIII. How Ponthus slewe the Saresyn and sent his
 25 hed to the Sawdeyn.]

And when he was on hors bak, the Saresyn said to hym :
 "Goo fetche an othre to helpe the, for thou be to yonge; and I haue grete pitee of the, for thou be so faiȝ a child. Itt weȝ grete harme that I schuld sloo the, by Mahounde. Ther-
 30 fore it is goode that thou gaynsay all that thou havis said and pray Mahounde to foryeve the thy evell wordes that thou hast said of hym." "Knyght," said Ponthus, "leve thes wordes. Thov shall see anon the vertue of Ihesu Criste. Defende the, if thou wolle."

- And Pontius withdrew hym a litle and putt his spei in the reste; and come with a goode will & smote hym betwene his sheld and his helmet, that he brake his shuldre. And the Saresyn smote Pontius so myghtely that he brake his spei.
- 5 And when the kyng and the people sawe the iustynge, thei thonked Gode and said that Pontius had wele iusted. Then Pontius went forthre and drewe oute his swerd, and come to the Saresyn and gave hym suche a stroke aboute the vyse of his helme that men myght se his vysage all open. Then had
- 10 the Cristen ioye, and hope in Gode. The Saresyn drewe oute his swerd, whiche was a full grete blade of stele, and smoth Pontius therwith so grete a stroke that he made his hede to shake and fere to smyte out of his eyn: so he was sore astoned of that stroke, and sore was the feight betwene theym. Bot at
- 15 all tymes Pontius had the better and lay in wate to smyte hym in the visage that was open; and so he mett with hym at a travers, that he smote of his nose and his chynne, so that it helde bot by the skynne: so he blede in suche wyse that his sheld and his nek were full of bloode, that vnneth he myght
- 20 sitt on hors bace. Then Pontius toke hym by the helme and pulled itt fro the hede, and after gave hym suche a stroke that he fell doune to the grounde. And when he had doon so, he smote of his hede and putt itt on his swerde poynte and broght itt to the squyers Saresyns and said to theym, "Fair Saresyns,
- 25 I present you with the hede of *your* maistre. Goo and be it to the sawdeyn sonne *your* kyng. And (tell hym)¹ it was at his requeste—this batell for the prevyng of our feyth and his, and that God shewed by a childe that he is verray Gode, and thus by his poer² he schall shewe that ye hold on a fals lawe;
- 30 and say to hym in shorte wordes that itt shall be hastily knowen and shewed, whethi that my God or his be more myghty. So goth oon *your* wey, for ye shall goo save and sure—for a messynger shall haue noon harme, bot if he require dedes of armes."

¹ R, *Et lui dictes que. . .*² R, *puissance.*

The squiers toke the hede and the body and broght¹ itt to theiȝ kyng and all his lordes Saresyns, and told hym and theym all the maneȝ of the request of the batell, and how the Cristen was of the age bot of xviij yeres at the moste. So
 5 the kyng and all his lordes Saresyns was full wroth and sorofull of theiȝ knyght, and thei had mervell of that aventuȝ, for he was holde (the best knyght) and the strongest on theiȝ party. So thei buried hym afte theiȝ maneȝ. So lefe we of hym and retourne we vnto Ponthus.

- 10 [Cap. IX. How Ponthus gave thonkynges to Gode for the victorie, and how he auised the kyng to assemble the princes and barounes ayeinst the Saresyns. How the Cristen ordeyned their batells.]

Ponthus smote his hors with the spores and rode streght
 15 to the hygh chirche, yeldyng thonkynges vnto Gode full devoutly, and said, "Ay, swete Ihesu Criste, thi dedes be mervellous, for by thy grace I haue the victorie of myn enemys,
 [*Fol. 171^b.] and I knowe that thou thinkest * on thi povert seruauantz; and goode Lorde haue mercy of me that am thy povere seruauant,
 20 and on this contree that is in thyn honde." Then he made his offeryng and lepe vnto his hors and so went vnto the kyng.

It is no demaunde whethiȝ the kyng & his barounes weȝ glade and made of hym grete ioy and grete chere. The kyng toke hym aboute the neke and kyssed hym, sayng thes wordes,
 25 "My faiȝ swete frende, we truste in you that ye schall delyuer vs and ouȝ countre frome ouȝ aduersaries that wold ouergoo vs."

Afte this itt is no question if Sidon and hiȝ ladies made ioy; and thei said, that beautie, bounte, and manhode weȝ assemelyd in his person—"this was mervellously doon of hym.
 30 We pray to Gode to save hym from all evyll."

Afte this the (kyng) sent for all his barounes and knyghtes to here howe the Saresyns weȝ comen to his countre, and the

¹ MS. *broght a*. The *a* is cancelled by the rubricator.

kyng asked of eueryche of theym his avice. So thei weȝ all abashed and astoned for the grete multitude that thei weȝ, that thei couth gyve noon answeȝ. So the kyng asked of Pontus his avice. "Ser," said Pontus, "to me itt longeth
 5 not to speke, that ben so young,—of litle reson, befor so many knyghtes." The kyng commaunded hym to say his opinion. "Ser," said he, "for youȝ worschipp and to fulfyll *your* commaundement I shal speke as a clerke of armes and as a childe among wysmen, bot all wey foryeve my folye. Ser, it semeth
 10 me that this people, how many so euer that thei be, [be]¹ not gretely to be dovbtet, for we be, and shall be,² (in Gode Almyghty) that may save or distroy with fewe people mony of theym; for in this case sett oon agayn oon hunderyth in keypyng of his feith, for this toveheth all Cristentie, that be
 15 *seruauntz* of Gode,³ and all Cristen people wolle come to helpe you at that tyme; for if thei wynn ouȝ contree, all othre contres wolle not be sure ne sikeȝ. Wherefore I wolle counsell you, by the goode avice of *your* knyghtes that be here present, to send to princes and barounes that ben *your* neightboures,
 20 that thei be here within xv days; and by the help of Gode and of ouȝ goode diligence men schal doo theym suche harme and angres that theiȝ gode schal neuer amende itt. Also sendes to garnysche *your* fortresses of men and vitell, & make strong youȝ tovnnes and castells—and in especiall, theym that be next
 25 the countree that thei be in—and withdrawe and distroye vitell frome theym."

¹ The obvious emendation of the passage is the insertion of a second *be* following the French. *Il me semble, combien que ceste gent soient grant nombre, ne douient pas estre tant doubtez, car nous seruons et sommes a dieu tout puissant, qui puet sauuer*, etc. The passage might stand without emendation if *how many so euer* might be regarded as a clause in opposition to *people*. This seems to me incongruous with the style of the text.

² MS. *be of gode myght enoghe*. The context shows clearly that *goode*, as is the case a few lines beyond, must be a corrupt reading for *Gode* and necessitates the emendation of the clause. I have adopted the reading of W for *we shall be and ben in gode almyghty*; which follows the French, *vid. supra*. Both English versions appear to have had an original reading *serons* instead of the *serouns* of R.

³ MS. *goode*.

This counsell was holden goode aboue all othiꝝ and was
 fulfilled. And messyngers was sent throgh oute the contre
 that was next: as in Normandie to the Vicecounte d'Aurences,
 to the Erle of Morteyne, to the Erle of Mayne, to the Lorde
 5 de La Vale, and of Sylle; and to the Duches of Aniou, for the
 Duke was deid; also he sent to the Lorde of Chasteaue Gouteꝝ,
 and to Guyllen de Roches, to Bortane de Doune, and to Landry
 de La Toure; into Petewe thei sent to the Erle of Peyters, bot
 he was goon to Rome, and thei sent vnto Geffrey de Lazenyen,
 10 to Lernell de La Mauelyon, and to Henri de La Marche: so
 thes knyghtes weꝝ chosen for the best that was in thos dayes
 in thoos contrees aboute theym. And all thos that weꝝ sent
 vnto, they sent to the contre aboute theym, that thei schuld
 in all the haste come in theiꝝ best aray, that thei myght come
 15 to gedre to helpe the kyng of Bretane ayeinst the Saresyns
 that wold distroye the Cristen people.

It is noo question bot all maner of people weꝝ comyng
 toward the iourney in theiꝝ beste array; and so by the xv
 days' ende thei weꝝ comen to gedre—a grete mayne of all
 20 maner of people, of the which the kyng made grete ioy. And
 so they toke theiꝝ wey togedre toward Breste and to Seynct
 Malewe, wheꝝ was the oste of the Saresyns, that pylled and
 destroyed the Cristen aboute theym.

[*Fol. 172.] Bot the Cristen ordeynyd fouꝝ thosand * horsemen to ride
 25 aboute theym and to devise the oste. So the Saresyns doubted
 of batell, thei weꝝ so neꝝ aproched. Then the kyng and Pon-
 thus ordenyd theiꝝ batells; and by cause the kyng was holde,
 he hade to helpe to governe his batell the Vicounte de Leon
 and the Lorde de La Vale and othiꝝ barounes; and of Galyce,
 30 Edmund de Vitry and Rauland de Dole, Roger de La Roche.
 In the second batell was Ponthus and Herland the senysshall.
 With hym weꝝ Normandes, the Erle of Morteyn, the Vicounte
 of Averences. The third batell was taken to gouerne to the
 Erle of Mayne and barounes and knyghtes of Aniou,¹ Guyllen
 35 de Roches, Andrewe² de La Toure. And of the fourte batell

¹ MS. *Auyen* read with R and W *Aniou*.

² MS. *landrewe*.

hadde the gouernaunce Geffray de Lazynyen¹ and Leonell de la Maleon, in the which weſ Normannes, Manseons, and Petievynnes.² The Normannes weſ by estimacion ix^c men of armes; Angevynnes and Petevynnys weſ fouſ thovsant wele
 5 fyghtyng men, as by estimacion.

[**Cap. X.** How the four batells of the Cristen rode toward the pauellons of the Saresyns aboute the poynt of day.]

And so theſ weſ fouſ grete batells, in the whiche Pontus and Herland had the voward; so thei rode toward
 10 theiſ enemys, and the kyng and othre that weſ with hym in the rerewarde, and lugged theym vpon the felde; and thei ordayned the halfe to wake, whiche watched, whils the othiſ halfe dide slepe. So theſ happed a grete affray aboute mydnyght; for Robt. de Sauguyn, Ranald de Sylle and a grete
 15 company de la Breste³ come rydyng with iij^{mi} men of armes toward the batell and thei weſ aspyed and knowne; and thei made grete ioie of theiſ commyng; and of theiſ desiſ thei putt theym in among the Angevynnes.

Then said the kyng to Bertam de Doke⁴ and to Landry de
 20 La Touſ, "Fair Seris, thonke we Gode ye be worthie men and of grete worship; ye be ouſ strenght and oure dunyon; in youre hondes lieth myche of oure besynes. Comes not to the besynes vnto the tyme that it be nede."

Pontus and Herland ordaned the Bretaynes in array.
 25 Then said Pontus to the kyng and to the lordes, "Seris I counsell that we sett vpon theym before day, or aboute the poynte of day, before that thei be armed or theiſ horses sadyllled and or thei be putt in ordinaunce. Thus thei schal

¹ MS. *De la Zynyen*.

² MS. *petie vynnys*.

³ I do not understand this *de la Breste*. R reads: . . . *venoient a la besogne a bien trois cens escus*, which W translates literally. Our translator's original may have made the reinforcements come from Brest.

⁴ Apparently a mistake for Bertam de Doune mentioned above. So in W and R.

be more easily discomfytt." "Truly," said the kyng and the lordes, "this counsell is goode. Let vs goo to hors, for itt is tyme." Then euery man armed theym and lepe to hors.

The wediŕ was faiŕ and bryght and the mone shone full
 5 bryght. So thei rode toward the Saresyns, that was ayeinst
 Breste in theiŕ pavellouns, and toke theiŕ counsell thus: bot
 if thei shuld be foghten with, thei wold ouerride all Bretan.
 And thei broght with theym engynes and laddirs forto con-
 queŕ the contre and thei dovybted not, for thei trowed to haue
 10 no batell, and thei made bot litle dowtes by cause of the grete
 multitude that thei weŕ of.

[**Cap. XI.** How the Cristen and the Saresyns ordaned their
 batells. How Ponthus rescoued the kyng of Bretayne
 and slewe the kyng Karodas, and afre that the Saresyns
 15 were putt to flyght, wanne the grete tresour. And how
 Sydon made grete ioy of the worschip, that he receyved
 in this batell.]

A¹fre itt happed that the batells approached so nygh that
 thei sawe the Saresyns, the whiche had mony pavyl-
 20 louns of dyuers colours. Then said Ponthus, that gyded
 theym that weŕ in the firste batell, to his people, "Se here the
 Saresyns that wold disheryte vs of oure faithe. We ben in
 the seruice of Almyghty Gode, wherfore noman haue noo
 doute bot that oon of vs is worth mony of theym; and I pray
 25 you of too thynges: oon is, aboue all thyng to truste in Gode,
 for by hys power we shal come aboue oure enemys; the secunde
 is, that ye take no thyng to pyllage ne to noo covetyse, bot
 oonly to discomfytt oure enemys and to putt theym oute of
 oure contrey, in the worshipp of oure faithe and for pitee of the
 30 pouere people that dwellys oute of strenghtes in the feldys—
 that laboures and travells, in whome we lyve. Therefore be
 [*Fol. 172^b.] we strong and stable to * defende the chirche and theym."

¹A extends through two ll. in the ms.; so also the initial A of Chapter vii.

And when he had said to theym thus, he said, "Nowe goo we forth my frendes, and euery man thinke to doo wele."

Then euery man toke hert to theym, and smote thei^r horses toward the tentys and began to bete doune tentys
 5 and pavyllouns, and to sley sume as thei we^r armyng theym and sume naked; and so thei made in that syde mony to dye. Grete was the noyse and the crye among theym. So cleryd the day. Then thei began to loke vpp, and the Bretayns laid on and putt fire in they^r luges—and in so myche
 10 that the kyng Karados was on hors bak in a playne with a grete batell, and said to his people on hyghe, "Euery man drawe to his captayne and putt theym in ordinaunce, for itt is nede." Then ye myght see the Saresyns putt theym in batell, notwithstondyng thei we^r vndertaken, for there were sleyne
 15 of theyme vij^M and that was the fourte¹ parte of thei^r people; bot the kyng Karodas was a mervellous goode knyght and of grete corage, and when he was on his hors, he toke his bane^r in his honde to releve his people. And when thei herde his voice and his horne, itt confortd thei^r hertes and recoueryd
 20 the hertes of the cowardyue.

And aboute the sonne rysyng was grete crie and grete noyse, for aboute that tyme thre batells of oure people were comyn to gedre in the syde of the Saresyns, thei^r myche was to doo, to feght—and ou^r people to putt fyre in thei^r luyng. Then
 25 the Saresyns drewe theym to gedre aboute the kyng Karodas. Grete were thei^r strokes on both sydes and grete was the crye of theym that we^r slayn and hurtt.

In that othre side faght the kyng of Bretayn, the whiche was fallen of his hors in the grete prese. And Pontius by
 30 aventure loked vp and saw that the kyng was fallen doune to the grounde. He was full sory and wrothe, for he was like to haue be deid, ne had Pontius and the Lorde de La Vale ben besyd hym to helpe hym. And Pontius, that toke litle hede of hym selfe, that sawe his lorde in distresse, he laid

¹ The *e* of *fourte* is written over an unfinished *h*.

aboute hym with his sworde on euery syde, so that he slowe
 both hors and man; so that euery man mervelled of his
 myght and thei fled fro hym for ferde of his strokes: so that
 by the helpe of Herland the senysshall and his cosyn germayn
 5 Pollides—for thes thre keped theym euer to gediŕ, and they¹
 dide so many grete dedys of armys that they rescoued the
 kyng and lyght adoune forto helpe hym vp, for he had his
 harme broken, the whiche grevyd hym sore, for he was nyghe
 oon hunderyth yeres olde. A goode knyght he was and of
 10 grete corage. So he was on his hors bak in disspite of his
 enemys, and he was ledd oute of the batell.

Grete was the batell egrove² on that oon parte and on that
 othre. So Ponthus behelde the batell on his ryght honde,
 that hade myche to doo, and therin was the Vicounte Daniou,
 15 Gautier de Rays, Bernard de Valoynes, Geffrey Dancen, Breut
 de Quyntyn-Monford, and mony othre barounes of Breytayn
 that weŕ bett doune and in grete aventure of theyŕ lives, for
 theŕ weŕ x Saresyns ayeinst oon Bretayn. Then said Ponthus
 to his fellowses, “Loo heŕ oure people that has myche to doo,
 20 and nede of helpe! Goo we to socouŕ theym.” Then they
 smote theiŕ horses with theiŕ spurrys so fersly that thei threw
 doune theym that was before theym. And Ponthus went all
 afore and dide sloo the hardiest that wold abide. Thei dide
 so myche, within a whyle they rescoved theyr men and putt
 25 the Saresyns to flyght and made theym to resort into the
 grete batell the which was grete and hyddous.

[*Fol. 173.] Bot the kyng Karodas helde full shorte³ the Erle of *
 Mayns and the Lorde Creton and the othre Maunceouns.
 Guyllyam de La Roche sawe Ponthus and cried to hym and
 30 said, “Loo here of youre people on fote!” Then come Pon-

¹ The French and the context suggest the reading *he* (Ponthus) here and below, but the departure from the construction is characteristic.

² *egrove* can only be the p. ptc. of *growe*, the *e* representing the original *ge* prefix. *v* with the value of *u* or *w* is not infrequent in this text, but I have no other instance of its intervocalic use. R, *Moult fu la bataille cruelle dune part et dautre*, which W translates literally.

³ R. . . . *tenoit moult a destroit*.

thus and brake the presse and rescoued the Erle and othre that hade nede. And when thei were remo[n]ted,¹ the batell was full cruell. The kyng Karodas and Breales and Corbadan, his vncl, dide mervellously dedys of armes and most harme
 5 to the Cristen. They had bett doune Guylliam de Roches and hade slayn Ralond de Avyon and mony othre. Then said Pontius to Herland and to Landry de La Toure, "Take hede of the kyng and of too knyghtes. If they endure any while, they wolle doo myche harme; and if we myght putt
 10 theym to dethe, we shuld haue the victorye of all othir." "Ser," said Landry de La Toure, "goo we to theym." Then said Pontius, "I wolle goo vnto the kyng." And so he went to hym and smote hym so grete a stroke that he felld hym to the grounde—that he brake his nek; and Landry de La Toure
 15 bett doune Corbadan; and Herland smote doune Breales and kytt of hys harme. And when thes thre wer bett doune, the Saresyns weþ gretly dismated and gretly dyscomforted, and stode as shepe withoute an herdman. Then thei begayn to flee, and oure men ran afre with grete crye and toke of
 20 theym; and they wust not wethiþ to flee bot toward theyr shyppes. And the Saresyns turned agayn and faght strongly, for mony faghte for the kynges dethe, and mony of theym knewe not of his dethe. And they hade bett doune the Lorde Vaucay, Geruast Daniou, the Lorde de Mounte John, and
 25 Lewpeyne² de Rocheford, and distroyed and slew mony of oure men.

So at the last oure men toke herte, with comforte of Pontius, so that thei bett theym doune. Pontius dide mervellously, for he stroke doune hors and men and all that wold abide
 30 hym. So they bere hym companye—Geffray de Lazynyen, Landry de La Toure, Leonell, Guyllen de Roches, and Bernard de La Roche, and Herland; and as they went they made way—and so that noon durst abyde theym. Ther Pontius cried and said, "On theym! On theym! They flee as shepe."

¹ R. *remontez*. The scribe has omitted the nasal mark.

² Probably *Le Payne*. W, *payne* de R.

And theȝ they slewe so many of theym within a whyle that all the felde ran of bloode and lay full of deyde bodyes, that it was mervell to see.

And they that myght ascape fledd to their shippes, and
 5 Ponthus afre and toke a bote and slew xxx^{ty} and toke foure
 scoore and asked theym wheȝ the ship was that the kynges
tresour was in. And they schewed itt to hym, whiche was a
 fair, grete shipp. So they led hym and Pollides into itt. And
 they caste ouer the borde all the men that they fonde in itt.
 10 And so they saw an otheȝ fayȝ shipp that his golde and syluer
 was in. Then said Ponthus to six of hys men, "Kepe ye
 thys, and I wolle goo see if there be any that wolle lyfte upp
 his hede ayeinst vs in that vessell." So he went into itt and
 toke itt.

15 Theȝ ye myght see Bretanes, Maunceouns, Petevynes, and
 Normanes—sume goo to shippes and sume to tentes, and so
 theȝ was not the powrest, bot that he wanne grete riches. Then
 afre they serched the felde for the Cristen men, euery man for
 his frende. So theȝ was fonde deid on the felde the Vicounte
 20 d'Auerenses, John Peonny, Turnebeufe, the Lorde Wylron;
 and of Maunceouns, Roger de Biamount, the Lorde Douncelles,
 and the Lorde Sylle; of the Hyȝpos, Gaciane de Mounte Vyel,
 Roland de Tenull, Hundres de Prouere, and Fresell de La
 Hay; off Petoy, Gauter de Chastameny, Andres de Mounte
 25 Agnant, Hulland de La Fo[r]yste;¹ and of Bretanes, Pieȝ de
 [*Fol. 173^b.] Doule, Ryoud de Rey,* Iohn de Mangon, Herdy de Lyon,
 Hubberd de Deyneȝ, Gaudyffry de Rouen, Aubry d[e] Rays,²
 and mony goode knyghtes. Eueryche caryed home his frende
 and buryed theym that weȝ deid and healed theym that weȝ
 30 hurte.

Ponthus made the grete *tresour* come to Vennys to hys hous
 and departed therof full largely and yeave to hys knyghtes
 and to his men, so that he was gretly alowed of all men.

¹ R abridges the list of slain earlier. W, *Hubault de la forest*. O, *Urbain de la forest*.

² MS. *aubryd Rays*. O, *Aubri de Rais*.

The kyng drew hym to Quynpartorentyn and theȝ he dide assemble all the grete lordes, and made to theym all a grete feste and yeave to theym grete gyftes to eueryche aftre his estate, and said to theym, "Fair Lordes, ye be comen, Gode
 5 thonke you, to the seruice of Gode and of the chirche and of the pouere people, and by the helpe of the Grete Lorde and of youȝ grete worthynes and hardynes, ye haue delyueryd this contree of Saresyns that wold haue distroyed ouȝ lawe and ouȝ landes. Thonke we God of his grace, that has
 10 yeaven vs suche victorye, for agayns oon of vs theȝ was six of theym."

So itt was gretly spoken of theym that faght the beste and gave the grettest strokes and did the moste dedes of armes. Bot withoute comparacion Pontius hade the name and the
 15 laude afor theym all, and they said that he had all wonne and gete. Also they gave grete pris to Geffray de Lazynyen, to Landry de La Toure and to Barnard de La Roche, for they weȝ thre of the best aftre Pontius. The kyng held his feste thre days; and aftre they toke theyȝ leve of the kyng;
 20 and Pontius convehed theym furthe; So euery man went home into his awn contree; and the kyng repared to Vennys.

It is not to aske if Sydon made grete ioy; and she said to Pontius, "My swete frende, blessed be Gode of the grete worschipp that ye haue receyved in this batell; for as Gode me
 25 helpe, I haue so grete ioy of the worschipp that I heȝ spoken of you that it puttes myn herte in full grete gladnes, and there [is] no thyng that dos me so myche goode, as the goode name that euery man yevys to you." "Ma dame," said Pontius, "it is not as euery man reportes, bot I thonke you
 30 of the worschipp that ye wold doo me; and Ma dame wytt ye wele, that if God sende me grace to doo any goode, itt comys of you; and I wold fayne doo so, that I myght fall in his goode grace, and to doo to you suche seruice that myght please you." "Pontius, your seruice I take wele a worthe,¹ whyls

¹ Paraphrasing R, *vostre service prens ie bien en gre de tout mon*. Tant comme ie vous trouuery loyay (sic) etc., which W translates literally.

that ye be trewe and withoute thinkyng of vylanye to me,
 for I wold that youŕ love be clene and sure; and wytt ye wele,
 that if I perceyve any othre wyse that ye thynke, then to
 youre worschipp and myn and to my frendes, as myche as I
 5 love you, I wolle hate you." "Ma dame," said Ponthus,
 "ne trowe ye not ne thynke ye not that I wolle ymagyn ne
 thynke bot to youŕ worschipp, for I haue fonde you so goode,
 clene, and trew, that I loue and prayse you a thowsand tymes
 the more—fore theŕ is no fayreŕ thyng in thys wordle then is
 10 a goode, clene lyve."

So they loued mytch to gedre and of trewe, clene love. Bot
 envye that may not dye comes aftre vpon theym, as ye shal
 here more playnly heŕ aftre. So lete vs leve to speke of theym,
 and turne to the kyng.

15 [Cap. XII. How by the voice of all the barounes Ponthus
 was chosen constable for the kyng. How he kepyd the
 ryght of Bretayn, and how he was loued of all men, and
 in especiall of fair ladies and gentylwomen.]

The kyng come afore all his barounes and said to theym,
 "Faiŕ Seris, I shal say you that I am full olde and I
 20 may not travell as I was wont to doo; and fro now forward
 me must take myn ease. Wherfor by your counsell I wolle
 chese a constable that shal haue the besynes of the londe of
 Bretayn, and suche oon as the barounes and the comons of the
 londe wolle beste obey vnto. So like ye, who be the moste
 25 profitable?—for I wold fayne that he weŕ chosen by youre
 avice."

"Ser," said the barounes all with oon voice, "we wot not
 [*Fol. 174.] wheŕ to * haue a bettre, if itt lyke hym, then Ponthus, for he
 is moste worthie to gouerne ane empyre, as for bountie, beautie,
 30 of wytt & gouernaunce and gentylnes—as a kynges sone, and
 with the beste begynnyng of his knyghthode that thys day is
 lyvyng."

When the kyng herd this, he hade grete ioy, for itt was all that he soght and desired, bot he wold not withoute thei^r desire and speche, for they had hym in thei^r conceyte and grace, and so the^r was noo gaynsayng.

5 So was Pontius called furth and the^r itt was said to hym before all, that the kyng and the barounes hade chosen hym constable of Bretayne,¹ as for the moste sufficient. So he thonked the kyng and all his barounes and said to theym that they had a small avice taken, and that he had nawther wytt ne valure to gouerne itt, and that he was to yonge. Bot
10 to blame hym selfe it aualed not, for he was charged therewith, all excusacions laid aparte.

So he was in office welbeloued and dred; for if the^r we^r any dyscension between the barounes and the knyghtes, he wold sett theym in peace, and acorde theym. He kepyd the
15 ryght of Bretayn withoute dooyng wrong to any man. He was loued of all men. He iustyd and made festes and reuellys. He was ryght plesaunt to grete and small, and in especiall among ladies and gentilwommen. He was curtes: if any did of his hoo^de to hym, he wold doo of his as sone to hym. He
20 wold here the pouere and doo theym ryght. He wold not that the pouere we^r grevyd. And he loued Gode and the chirche. He herd euery day thre messes at the leste. He loued woddess and ryvers and all honest disportess.

[Fol. 1.] ¹ Douce Fragment A begins here: I normalize partially the capitalization but retain the punctuation of the ms.

Bretayn. as the most sufficient. So he thankyd y^e kyng and the barouns and sayd to theym that they had take a small [avice] and that he had not
5 wytt ne gouernaunce ne valour to gouerne it and that he was to yong. But to blame hym self yt avayleth not for he was then chargyd wold he nold he. So he was in his office well belouyd and dred for yf there were eny dissension by twene the barons and the knyghtis he wold set theym in peas and concord. He kepte the right of Bretayn without dooyng wrong of eny man
10 he was louyd of all men he iustyd and made festys and reuelles. He was plesaunte with gret and small and in especiall amonge ladies and ientilwomen he was so curtes yf eny man dyd of his hode to hym he wolde do of his as sone. He herd the pore and he dyd theym ryght. He wold not that pore people were grevyd. And he lovyd God and holy chirche he hard

If he come into a toune, he wolde send for ladyes and gentylwomen and make theym to daunce and syng. All dissportes and ioy come theȝ as he was; for he wold make to theym dynnars and sopers. He was beloued of mony faiȝ ladies and
 5 gentylwomen, that shewed to hym mony faiȝ draghtes of loue, bot he neuer disired loue of ladies ne of gentylwomen othre wys then to theiȝ worschip, for any cheȝ that they made hym. So they wold say among theym oon to oon othir, "She was full happy that was belouyd of Ponthus;" and dyuers said
 10 to theym self, "Wold Gode, he wold loue me as myche as I wold loue hym." //

Myche he was beloued of grete and of small. Bot envy that neuer lakked was putt in oon of his xiiij fellowes of his contrey, that was a grete spekeȝ and a flatereȝ¹ and couth
 15 mony fals engynes.

[**Cap. XIII.** How Guenelete had envye of his maistre Ponthus; and how by his evyll spekyng he put dyscencyon between Ponthus and Sydone.]

20 **S**O he hade to his name Guenelete, that sawe of Sidon the loue, and of his maisteȝ Ponthus. He had therat envye, and forto assey hym, he asked of Ponthus oon hors that Sydon

euer two masses and after he louyd to go to the woodys and to the revers and to all disportis Yf he come to a town he wold sent (sic) for ladyes and ientyll women and made theym to daunce and syng and all dyssporte come there he was and ioye also for he wold geue theym dyuers gyftis He was
 5 louyd of many a feyre lady and gentyll woman. that shewed to hym meny a feyr draught of loue but he never desired loue of lady no ientylwomen. none other wyse than to theyr worshippe. for eny chere that they made to hym. So they wold sey one to another. She was full happy that was
 10 [*Fol. 1^b.] belouyd of Ponthus. Another said wold God that he * louyd me as moche as I wold do hym Moche he was belouyd of gret and small but envy that lackyd not [was] put in one of his xiiij felowes that was a gret speker and a flatereȝ and couth meny fals wrenchis. * * * *

He was namyd Evenylet (sic) that saw the loue of Sydony and his mayster Ponthus He had gret envye and for to asay [hym] he askyd
 15 Ponthus an hors that Sydonye gaue hym. So he thought well that he mygt

¹ MS. flatereȝ.

hade yeven hym. So he wyst wele that he myght not haue hym, bot for to assey hym and forto tempe hym || he said, "Maistre, yeue me Liard that Sydon yeave to you." "Truly," said Pontus, "that wolle I not yeave you, bot goo to my stable
 5 and (take) oon othre—suche oon as wolle please you, for theȝ be more faireȝ then he." "For sothe," said Guenlete, "I wolle noon hors haue, bot if I may haue Liard." "Ye may not haue hym," said Pontus. "How so?" said Guenelete, "Thinke ye myche of oon hors to me? I owe to truste full litle in you."
 10 "How so?" said Pontus, "Is it not sufficiaunt to you to chese of all myn horses oon of the best? And if ye be not pleased with oon, take you twoo of the beste."

Guenlete passed ouer and made hym ryght wrothe and said in his hert, "I wote wele I shal fayle of hym, bot he shal be
 15 dere boght, if I live long." He thoght full evyll, as he that was full of envye and of flaterye, and thoght to goo and hyndre him first vnto Sidone.

So he spake with a damesell that was the prīvyest with
 [*Fol. 174^b.] Sydone and * glossed hiȝ with wordes and said that he loued
 20 hiȝ myche and that he muste tell hiȝ a grete counsell; and made hiȝ to sweȝ by Gode and by all his saintes, that she schuld not discure hym. Then said he, "I loue so myche the kyng and my lady his doghtre, as theym that norysched me,

not haue hym and to tempte hym. Mayster. he sayd geue me Lyard that Sydony gaue you. Trewly said Pontus that wyll I not geue you. But go to my stable & take such another as wyll please you for there be more feyrer. For soth sayd Guynelot I wyll none hors haue but Lyard Ye may
 5 not haue hym sayd Pontus What sayd Guynelot let ye to geue an hors to me I aught full litull to tryste to you. How so seyð Pontus suffichith not to you to chewse of all my hors. And yf ye be not pleasyd with one takyth two of þe beste Guynelot passyd ouer and made him right wrothe and seyð in his hert I wot I shall fayll of hym & he shall be dere boght
 10 yf that I lyve longe. He thought full evyll as he that was full of envye and of flattery. And thought to hyndre hym to Sydone. And that in haste. So he spake to a damysell that was prīvy of counsell with Sydone. And glosyd her with wordis and said that he louyd her moche and that he muste tell her a gret counsell where fore she swerith by God and by all seyntis
 15 that she wold not discouer hym. I loue so moche—

therefore I wolde hide no thyng that schuld be agayne theym. Know ye¹ not," he said, "that Ponthus my maistre makes my lady and youres to beleve that he loves hiȝ more than any othere in the worlde? Wytt ye wele, he bot iapes with [hiȝ],
 5 for I haue perceyved that he loves an othere bettre by the halfe: so it is folie for hiȝ to sett hiȝ hert on any man that be so chaungeable, for suche wold stond in grace of mony, and they be full disceyveable. Therefore it is goode that my ladye take goode hede to hiȝ self."

10 Then said the damesell, "In good faithe, I trowed that he had ben more trewe then he is, bot at all tymes I wote wele for certayn that he desired neuer thyng of my lady bot goode; bot nowe I se wele he is not suche on as hym semyd."

Then the damesell trowed that he said trewe and come vnto
 15 hiȝ lady and said to hiȝ, "Ma dame, ye must promys me that ye wolde not discure me of that thyng that I wolde tell vnto you." And afte that, she told hiȝ of all that she had herd—howe that Ponthus loued an othere bettre then hiȝ.

When Sydon herd that, she was full sory and full heuy in
 20 hiȝ hert, what cheȝ so euer she made. So at the laste Ponthus come to se hiȝ as he weȝ wonte to doo, makynge glade cheȝ. And Sidon made mornynge cheȝ and was thoughtfull and she mad[e] to hym bot sadd cheȝ. And Ponthus was abasshed and come to hiȝ damesell Ellyous and asked hiȝ what
 25 Sydon alyd. "Truly," said Ellyous, "I wote not, bot it is nowe x dayes and more sithe she made goode chere² as she was wonte."

Then Ponthus went vnto hiȝ and said, "Ma dame, what cheȝ is with you? Haue ye any greuaunce? Is ther any
 30 thyng that I may doo for you? Commaunde me as youȝ awn." And she said, "Noon may wytt to whome to trust; this worlde is so mervellous to know." "Ay, May³ dame, mercy," said he, "say ye me wherfore ye say thes wordes. Is

¹ *ye* entered above the line.

² *chere* entered above the line.

³ *may* for *ma* and *lay* for *la* are not infrequent. See glossary.

ther any thyng that I haue doon, or any othere, that has displeased you?" "Nay," said she, "bot so myche I say to you." So he departed and went into his chaumbre, full of sorowe and of pensynes. Pontius myght no more come
 5 forto haue goode cheſ as he was wonte, so he perceyved wele that he was hyndered to hiſ by sune fals flatereſ. And so he went agayn, trowyng to wytt the cause, bot it was for noght, for he couth wytt nomore at that tyme.

That nyght he was full sorowful and lay thinkyng with-
 10 oute slepe, sayng, "Allas, sorowfull catyve! What haue I doo? Who has hindred me to my lady? Alas! What is he or she that wolle slo me, distroye me, murthre me so vntruly with oute any deseruyng? Who be they that wolle putt fro me my most ioy worldly and make me nyght and day languſ
 15 and wale?"

So hertly and petuosly complenyd Pontius; and if he had hevynes, Sydne hade myche more. She said, "Allas! Who shall haue truste in any man? I am deceyved, for I trowed that he hade bene true aboue all othere knyghtes. Howe has
 20 natuſ thus fayled to make oon the most faire, the most gracijs, the most best hold of worship, most curtes, most large, of all goode maners, withoute any thyng wantyng—howe has thou forgete to putt in hym truthe and stable-nes? Allas! it is grete pitee and reuthe." Thus sorowed
 25 she, the faiſ Sydne.

[**Cap. XIV.** How Pontius, that got no chere of Sydne, departed from the courte secretly.]

[*Fol. 175.] ***A**nd by this meane ther was myche trowble between theym, so vntruly was thes too treue louers put in to greuauce
 30 and sorow by this flatereſ.

Pontius, that had litle reste and slepe, rose vp in the mornyng and went to here messe; and afre he sent for Ellyous to speke with hiſ, the whiche he loued wele, by cause that Sydon loued

hiȝ the best and was the most secrete aboute hiȝ ; and he said to Ellyous, "My swete frende, I mervell mych of that that my lady says to me, in so myche that I trowe that I moue neuer haue ioy in myn hert." "Ay," said she, "ye may not
 5 doo so, for I supposse my lady doos itt bot to assey you, or ellys it is by sume reporte that shal be founde a lesyng, and therfor I wote not wherfor ye shuld be so discomforted." "Ay," said he, "my loue, I wot not what ye thinke, bot I wole a while oute of the contree and I wolle not come agane
 10 vnto my comyng a gane may please hiȝ."

He said no mor at that tyme, bot withdrewre hym into his chaumbre and called to hym oon auncient squyeȝ, his name was Gyrard, and said to hym, "calles iiij yomen and lete trusse myn harnes prively, for I wolle goo awhile hens, bot
 15 not full farre, nygh to the ende of oon yeȝ; and I wolle Herland be for me leutenaunt, for he is a goode knyght and a worthie."

Then he went to the kyng and said that he wold goo a while from thens. The kyng said to hym, "My dere frende,
 20 goo ye not farre bot that I may se you ofte tymes, for in you is all my ioy and the sustenaunce of my life and the gouernaunce of my reaume." "My Lorde," said he, "I thynke not to goo into noo place, bot and I here that ye haue any thyng to doo that touches *your* worshipp, bot that I wolle come to
 25 you in shorte tyme." Nevyȝ the les he had myche to doo or he gate leve to goo.

So he toke leve of the kyng late in the evynnyng full prively, that noo man perceyved hym ; and so he wente into his chaumbre and sent for Herland the senysshall and said to
 30 hym lyggyng on his bedde, "Herland my swete frende, I wolle goo a while forto se more of the wordle, and to aquante me with goode knyghtes ; so I haue spoken to the kyng that I wolle leve you as for lyeutenaunt. Also I pray you as ye loue me to be goode frende to my cosyn german Pollides and
 35 to myn othre felowes." "Ay," said Herland, "whethre woll[e]

ye goo my fair frende?" Said he, "I goo bot a litle way hens. I wolle not tarry long. I wolle also that nooman knowe therof, for a cause." Then Herland wold nomore enquer hym and dovbtd not that he wold tarry long.

5 And when Herland was departed from hym, he then sent for¹ his clerke and made hym to make twoo *lettres*. Oon was to yeve his power to Herland the sensshall and that othre was to recommaunde hym to his fellowes, praying theym to doo goode *serviuce* to the kyng and to obey Herland, and that
10 he son wold come agane. And so he sealed theym and betoke theym to his clerke and bad that he shuld not delyuere theym vnto that othre morowe at nyght. He dide so for doute that his fellowes wold fylloy hym.

When it come to the houre of myd nyght, he rosse and
15 arrayed hym and went furth as *prively* as he myght and rode all that tyme vnto he come to the forest of Breselyn.² And then he wente into the pryore that was nyghe besyd—and nyghe to itt ther was an hermytage that stode all solitarie in the depenes of the foreste. Ther he was vj days. And euery day he rosse
20 erly vpp to goo to the hermytage to hee messe, and did myche [*Fol. 175^b.] abstynence, for he fasted thre days in the woke and * euery friday he wered the hare.

So he thocht myche vpon the kyng, that he was olde, and that the reaume was intendaunt to hym. So he thocht that
25 he myght not goo farre, lest any disease or trouble we in the contree; and so he was all pensy and heuy in his thoghtes.

He herd the byrdes syng swetly and merrely—and [it] was in the myrre moneth of Apryle—and so he made ther a song of the whiche the refrete was this melodie:—"Of byrdes and
30 wordly ioy is to me noo disporte, sythe that she that I loue the beste has me enstraunged and of hir loue dyscomforthed."³ And he made therof a wele goode note.

¹ MS. *fro*.

² MS. *Bres yn lyn*, *yn* cancelled by the rubricator and *e* inserted above it.

³ A quatrain in the French original. See note.

[**Cap. XV.** How Ponthus sent a dwarfe thurgh all the contrey of Fraunce to anounce and shewe of dedes of armes that shuld be made in the forest of Breselyn euery tuysday of the yere.]

- 5 **A**nd afre, he thoght to make entirpryse, wheṛ as he wold doo fetys of armys. And so he made his ordenaunce, and made to fetch a dwarfe and arrayd hym wele in a goone of sylke and betoke hym a yoman and a hors and a *lettre* wretyn in this wyse :—
- 10 “The blake knyght wyth armes whyte gyves knoleche to the best knyghtes of euery contre, that they shall fynde by the Welle of Aventures in the forest of Breselyne a paveloune blake with armes whyte all the tuysdays of the yeṛ, and at the houre of prime; and theṛ they shall fynde
- 15 (a tree) whervpon his shelde shal be honge; and theṛ shal be an horne that a dwarfe schall bloo; and when the horne blooys, theṛ shall come oute ane old damesell and bryng a cercle of golde; and an hermyte *with* hiṛ, the which shall say to theym what they shall doo and shall bryng theym into a
- 20 medow, wheṛ they shall fynde the blak knyght armyd at all pecys, the whiche wolde iuste a course with a speṛ and afre that smyte with a swerd trenchand *without*e any poynte¹ to the vtterance. And he that he conquereys shall aske of all the knyghtys in verray *certayne*, who be the most faiṛ beholde in
- 25 the roialme of Litle Bretayn among all the ladies and gentylwomen, and to hiṛ he shal yelde hym prisoneṛ; and she to doo hiṛ wyll with hym, in the name of the blake knyght soroyng beryng armes white. And it is to wytt that all thos that has iusted with [hym]² shall *graunte* to come the Whys-
- 30 sontyde nexte afre into the forest to a fest that shal be holden theṛ. And he that has the best iustyd, shall haue the speṛ and gofanoun and a cercle of golde full of margarites; and he that has³ smyten the moste hardy *with* a swerd, shall haue a swerd harnyshed, *with* gold frenge. And if it happen that any
- 35 conquēṛ the blak knyght, he may send hym to prison to what lady or gentylwoman that hym lykes.”

¹ MS. *poynte wantyng*. R, *le quel [chevalier] . . . se combatra de lespee trenchant sans pointe iusques a oultrance.*

² R, *qui auront iouste a lui.*

³ MS. *has the.*

When Pontus had taken thes *lettres* to the dwarfe, he commaunded hym to goo thorowe all the contres of Fraunce wher as festes and iustys wer holden and to yeve theym knolege of the dooyng.

5 [Cap. XVI. How there come of euery londe knyghtes to dedes of armes with the Blak Knyght; and how they were chosen by the smytyng of theyr sheldes. How Pontus iustyd with Barnard de La Roche the first tuysday of the yere, and sent him prisonner to the faire
10 Sydone.]

The dwarfe, that was wele spoken, wente thorow oute all the contre and gave to all men knolege of the assembly. So they mervelled myche of what contre the knyght was that wold doo thes entrepryses, and that he did chese the
15 beste knyghtes of euery contrey. Mony arrayd theym to go thedre and said that grete worship shuld be vnto hym that myght haue the swerd and the speer, and myche more vnto hym that myght conquer the knyght. It was not long bot of Bretane and of othre contres ther come en[o]we.

20 Pontus had his menne sworne to hym, both the prioure and the covent and the hermyte, that they shuld not dyscouer hym to noo body. And so he did sende to Reyns, that befor
[*Fol. 176.] was called the rede toune, to feche * that hym neded. He sent to seke an olde damesell that shuld be his secrete,
25 and she suld haue hir (cote) and mantyll of sylke and a circle of golde vpon hire gray hede and a kerchyf befor hir vysage, be cause that noman suld know hir. And Pontus was in the array of an hermyte with hede and berde white with a vyssouf befor his face, and held in his honde
30 the ordinaunce.

It happenyd that the same thuysday in the morow ther come mony knyghtes for to doo fetys of armys with the blak knyght. So they wer at the Well of Mervells—sum called it the welle of Bellacion. So they sawe a fair tente bente and a

grete pavellon. It tarryed not long bot a dwarfe come oute of the pavellon, a full lothly on to se, and come to a grete tree, wher as hynged an horne and the blak sheld with whyte armys; and the dwarf toke the horne and blew it on hight;
 5 and when he had doon so, then come the damesell oute of the pavylloune and the hermyte, that held hiȝ by the gylten reyne, and they come streght to the sheld & made the dwarfe to crye that euery knyght that wold doo fetys of armes with the blake knyght shuld hyng his sheld vpon the grete tre, the whiche
 10 was sett a boutte with sperys and smetyn full of crochetys, that euery man myght hyng his sheld vppon; and so euery man that was ther did hyng vpp theiȝ sheld. And when the sheldes wer hynged vpp, the dwarfe said to the damesell, "I muste say to you that the ordenaunce is, that ye shall doo
 15 chese among all the sheldes iiij sheldys by the advice of the hermyte, to the whiche ye shall shote, to eueryche ane arowe fethered with golde; and hym that ye smyte the furste shal goo arme hym for the furst tuysday; and that sheld that she smytes with the secunde arowe shall be redy ayenyst the
 20 secunde tuysday; and that she smytes with the thirde arowe shall be redy the thyrd tuysday; and that she smytys with the fovrt arowe shall be redy the fovrt tuysday." And so was it doon euery moneth of the yeȝ, so theȝ shuld be ·liij· knyghtes delyuered in the yeȝ, of the best and of the worthiest
 25 that she couth chese by his advyce; and this dured all the yeȝ vnto¹ the tyme that he myght fynde oon that by fetys of armys myght ouercome hym.

And when the dwarfe had thus said, he entred into the pavellon on hors bak and broght a feiȝ Turquys boude² and
 30 fouȝ arowes fethered with gold; and the damesell and the

[Fol. 2.] ¹ Douce Fragment B.—the tyme that he couth fynde hym that by fete of armes ouer come hym. And whan the dwarffe had þus sayd he enteryd in to the pavyon on hors bak and he brought forth a feyr Turkes bowe. And four aroos feddaryd with gold. And the damysell and þe hermyte

² *Bowe* is the obvious emendation following R & W, but the spelling is likely enough to be the scribe's.

hermyte went aboute the tree to se the sheldys; and the hermyte councelled the damesell and tolde hiȝ the whiche that she shuld smyte. So sche schote the fouȝ arowes and smote fouȝ sheldes: the furst was Bernardes de La Roche, that was
 5 holde the best knyght in Bretane; the secunde was Geffray de Lazynyen, for the beste of Peytou; the thyrd was Landry de La Toure, for the best of Angevynnes; the fourte was the Erle of Morteyn, for the best of Normannes.

And when she hade shote, the hermyte led hiȝ into the gret
 10 tente that was blake with armys white; and anon he lyght doune and armyd him at all pecys and suyd oute of the tente, the shelde on his nek,¹ the speȝ in his honde, vpon a gret blak hors trapped in blake with armes white, and richely arrayed. The knyght was grete and large, and was sore drede and
 15 myche lokod on—mervellyng myche what he schuld be—for the comon voice was that Pontus was goon to the roialme of Poleyne and of Hungarye, forto enqueȝ what was to doo theȝ beyonde; wherfor noman thoght that it was he.

It was not long to Bernard de La Roche, the whiche hade
 20 the furst arowe in his shelde, come ryght nobely arrayd with

went about the tre to se the shyldes. And than the hermyte councellyd the damysell and told her which sheldys that she shuld smyte. And so she shot the four aroos and smote the iiij sheldys. þe first was Bernard de La Roche. that was holdyn the beste knyght of Bretayn The second was þan
 5 Geffrey de Lazinyne for the best of Paytaye. The third was Landry de La Tour. for the best of Angeowins The iiijth was the Erle of Mortayn for the beste of Normandye And whan she had shott the hermyte led her in to the gret tent that was blak with white armes. And he alightyd down and armed hym at all pecys And anon he com forth of þe tent with a sheld on his bak
 10 and a spere in his hond with a gret blak hors trappyd with blak and white armes and richely arrayed. The knygt was gret and large and was sore drad and gretly lokyd on. And the people mervelyng moche what that he shuld [be], for the comon voyse was that Pontus was gone into the realme of Polayn and of Hongrye for to enquere what was to do there by yond. where
 15 fore that no man thought that it was he. Hyt was not long that Barnard de La Roche which had the first aroo in his sheld come right nobely armed

[*Fol. 2^b.] with gret foyson of * harnesse and with trumpettys. symphonyes and oþer

¹ R, *Lescu au col*. The reading of the Douce Fragment, *bak*, is clearly wrong.

grete foyson of hornys,¹ trumppys, symphonys, and othre myn-
 [*Fol. 176^b.] strelces,² whiche made grete noys.*

The blak knyght toke a copp of gold and putt itt into the
 well and wett the ston that stode beside the well; and the water
 5 spred aboute vpon the ston; and then it began to thonne and
 hale³ and made strong wedre⁴—savyng itt lasted bot awhile.
 So the straungers mervelled myche of the mervells of the well;
 and euery day the ston was wett befor that they faght.

Afre that, he lepe vpon hors, with his helmete, and toke his
 10 spe in honde and smot his hors with his spurrys and come
 toward Barnard, and Barnard toward hym agayne ward. And
 so they gave grete strokes with thei sperys in suche wyse that
 they perched⁵ both theyr scheldes, and come agane and smote
 to gedre in suche wyse that Barnard and his hors fell. Bot
 15 Barnard keped⁶ hym vpon his foote and lyghtly lepe oute of
 the saddle. And when the blak knyght sawe him vpon his fote,
 he lyght doune and come rynnyng vpon hym with his bryght
 swerd and gave hym grete strokes whe as he myght areche

instrumentys which made gret noyse The blak knygt toke a copp of gold and
 put yt in the well and wet the stone and the watre spred aboute. And than
 yt be gan to thundre and to hayre (sic) and made straunge weder save yt
 lastyd but awhile. So the straungers mervelyd of the mervelles of the well.
 5 And euery day the stone was wet be fore they faught. After he lepe vpon
 his hors with his helmet and his spere. And stroke his hors with his
 spurres toward Bernard [and Bernard] to hym. So they gave gret strokys
 with her sperys vnder suche a wyse that they partyd theyr sheldys in sondre
 that Barnard and hys hors fell down. But Bernard lepyd vpon his fete. And
 10 when that Ponthus saw hym on fote he alight on fote. and come rennyng
 vpon hym with his sword and gaue hym gret strokys afore that they brake
¹ R, *a grant foison de cors*. *Harnesse* in the Douce Fragment is obviously
 a corruption.

² Not in R. or W.

³ R, *gresler*. I do not understand the *hayre* of the Douce Fragment.

⁴ R, *fort temps*.

⁵ R, *percerent les escus*. The *partyd . . . in sondre* of Douce is apparently
 due to mistaking a *c* for a *t*. The word in the scribe's original was probably
 contracted as in our text.

⁶ R, *sailli sur piez* would make the *lepyd* of the Douce Fragment appear
 the original reading. The clause *and lyghtly lepe oute of the saddle* is neither
 in W, R, nor Douce; therefore a scribal amplification.

hym. And Barnard defended hym with all his myght; and Ponthus smote so grete strokes and sore that he brake all that he raght, and gave hym suche a stroke that he smote doune the vyssoure of his helmete and all the cyrcle, and hurtt hym
 5 a litle in the vysage. And Barnard left vp his swerd and smote Ponthus, bot Ponthus putt itt sumwhat by, and the stroke lyght vpon the sheld so sore that he hade gret payne to pluk itt oute. And Ponthus drew to hym his swerd with so grete myght that the swerd abowed in sundre;¹ and as son as Barnard sawe
 10 that he was with oute swerd, he made grete sorowe. And then Ponthus said to hym, "Knyght itt is tyme that ye be goo to oon of the fayrest of this roialme—damecell and madyn." And Barnard spake noo worde to hym, as he that was angre and wrothe. And Ponthus said to hym, "Gode defende that
 15 I shuld stryke you when ye² haue not wherwith to defende you." Then Barnard come and wenyd to haue taken hym with his hondes. And Ponthus that was grete and strong avaunced hym and smote hym on the helme and drewe hym to hym so myghtely that he made hym fall to the grounde,
 20 whethiŕ he wold or not; and putt hym vndre hym and said, "Knyght I wolle lete you goo to hiŕ prison, that be ryght fayŕ; and grete hiŕ wele in the blak knyght name." And so he withdrewe hym.

And Barnard sawe the benygnyte of the knyght, and prased
 25 hym myche, and rosse vp and come to the knyghtes that beheld

all that they raught and gaue hym suche a stroke that he brake down his visare of his helmet and the sercle and hurt hym a litull in the vesage. And Bernard lyfte vp his sword and smote Ponthus and Ponthus put up his sheld afore hym that the sword stake in the sheld with so gret myght that
 5 the sword abode. And whan Bernard saw that he was with out a sword he made gret sorow. And than Ponthus sayd to hym Knyght yt is tyme that ye go to the mercy of þe feyrest damysell and mayden of the realme and Barnard spake no word to hym ageyne as . . .

¹ R, *Pontus . . . tire a soy lescu de grant force. tant que le branc sen vint avec lescu.* Douce has apparently omitted *and Ponthus drewe to hym his swerd* after *sheld*. But the reading *abowed in sundre*, "broke," is a corruption of the *abode* of Douce.

² y written over an h.

the batell and said, "Fayr Lordes, I haue fonde my maystre. Sith I was borne, fonde I neuer so myghty knyght ne so curtesse. Now ther is no more bot I wold witt of you, in goode feith, whiche be called the fayrest madyn of this reaume."

5 So they sayd itt was the kynges doghtre Sydone, and she had the voce of theym all. So he departed and went vnto Vennys.

So leue we a litle of Barnard de Lay Roche and retourne to Ponthus.

[**Cap. XVII.** How aftre the batell Ponthus rode his way
10 prively into the forest.]

Ponthus lepe on hors bak and entred into the forest, ryd-
yng by ways certan that he knewe wele, in suche wyse
that noo man wyst wheer he become. And so he come at
resonable houre to the same place wheer he was before and
15 entred in and shytted the doer vpon hym and lyght doune and
did vnharmed hym; and the damesell, the dwarfe, and othere
[*Fol. 177.] with vyssers abode in the tentys* vnto the nyght; and then
went theyr way, when all men was withdrawn.

So leue we to speke of theym and retourne to Bernard de
20 La Roche and to Sydone &c.

[**Cap. XVIII.** How Barnard de La Roche yelded hym
prisonner to the fair Sydone, and of the grete chere that
she made hym.]

Sydon was day and nyght in sorowe and mysease, when
25 that Ellyous hir damesell had told hir that Ponthus
wold goo awchyle oute of (that) contre. She thoght that it was
for the evyll chere that she made hym; so she mervellously
repenyd hir and cryed oftyn tymes, "Allas wreche! Now
haue I lost by my gret folye all my wordly ioy. Blame haue
30 they that first broght me that worde, for I knowe wele and
se wele, that and it wer not for the grete fere that he has by
cause I was wrothe with hym, he had not lefte the contre;

and sothely that was grete foly of me, for I doute not bot that he is of a¹ trewe hertt as any lyvyng. "Then she wept and sorowed in heȝ hertt, for she dred to haue loste hym. And so she sorowed day and nyght.

5 Grete language was theȝ of Pontius in the contrey. The kyng myght not be in peace in no wyse, which gretly weymented; and so did his cosyn *german* and his fellowes; and all maner of people, grete and small, of the courte weȝ sory.

10 And son Barnard come to the courte and asked afre fayȝ Sydon and said that he was hiȝ prisoner. The kyng sent for hiȝ; and she come with a grete felysshyp of ladyes and gentylwommen; and theȝ assemelyd all maner of people to here Barnard de La Roche. And when he was comyn into
15 the hall, he kneled doune and said vnto Sydon on hyghe, that euery persone myght here, "Ma dame," said he, "vnto you sendes me the blak knyght with armes white, whiche has me conquerd by his worthenes in dedys of armes, and said to me that I shuld yelde me prisoner to the fairest madyn of this
20 reame so I haue enquired of all knyghtes and squyers that theȝ weȝ, whiche was the fairest madyn; and they said all with oon voice that it was ye; and thus I yelde me vnto youȝ prisoun as *your* knyght, and doo with me as ye wolle. And yitt he badde me that I shuld recommaund hym vnto you in
25 hys name."

Sydon waxed rede and was sumwhat asshamed by cause that they helde hiȝ for the fairest. "For sothe," said she, "God thonke theym, for they bot simply avysed theym to chese me; bot I thonke the knyght that sent you hidre, and
30 I beseeche you to tell me what he is." "For soth," said he, "I knowe hym not." "How so?" said Sydon. "Ma dame," said he, "he wolle not be knowen—what he is, bot sothely he is the fairest knyght that euer I se and the best cann stryke with a speȝ and with a sworde, and me semys he is a little

¹The emendation a[s] is tempting, but as *any lyvyng* probably means "as much as, etc."

more¹ than Ponthus, and myche lyke hym; bot it is not he, for it is a comon sawe that he is goone into the reaume of Polleyne and of Hungary to a werre that ther is."

Enughe was itt spoken of the blak knyght, and how that
 5 the next tuysday he shuld feght with Geffray de Lazynyen, and the next aftre folloying with Landry de La Toure, and the next tuysday aftre with (the) Erle of Morteyne.

The kyng and the ladys made grete cheŕ to Barnard, and they ete all with the kyng in the hall. Sydone iapyd with
 10 Barnard de La Roche and said, "Ser, I haue grete ioy to haue suche a *prisonner*, and so ye shuld haue grete drede what
 [*Fol. 177^b.] *prisoun* ye shall endure." And Barnard began to laghe * and said, "Ma dame, and ye doo me noo soreŕ *prisonment* than this, I shall endure itt more easly; and knowe ye wele that
 15 or the yeŕ be passed, ye shall haue more largely of *prisonners*, for I shall not be alloone."

Aftre dynneŕ begane the dauncers² and the carralles. Bot Sydone daunsed bot a litle, and yitt she³ wold haue daunsed lesse bot for drede that any shuld *perceyve* hiŕ sorowe.

20 So leve we of theym and of the courte and retourne agayne to the second tuysday.

[**Cap. XIX.** How on the second tuysday Ponthus conquered Geffray de Lazynyen.]

25 **T**he day was faîŕ and clere, and the knyght de Lazynyen, the which was a *mervellous* goode knyght, was armed at all peces and come before the well. And the blak knyghth come oute of the pavyllone, the shelde on the nek and the speŕ in the honde. And sone they lete theyŕ horses renne, and smote to gedre, and gave grete strokes, so that theyŕ
 30 horses fell vpon theym, and in so myche that almuste they ouerthrewe theym self. Theŕ they withdrewe theym a farrome and toke awthre of theym a grete, sharpe speŕ and come to

¹ R, *ung pou plus grant*. W, *he is somewhat more than was Ponthus*.

² R, *dauncers*, though strange, is apparently right. *Commencerent le dames a dancier mais Sidoine ne danca gueres*. W, *began the daunces and the karolles* / bot, etc.

³ MS. *ye*.

gedre as hastily as they myght, hors and man, and gave so many grete strokes vpon theiſ sheldes, that both the knyghtes fell and theyſ horses—so boustously that Geffray hors fell vpon his body, the hors hede vndre, so that the hors ne the
 5 man myght remeve; for he hade his thye and his legge vndre the hors and was gretly bressed. Bot Pontus helped vp the hors and the knyght both, and hade had grete shame to haue ben so drawn doune; and so he beheld the knyght, that myght not drawe hym oute frome vndre his hors, for his foote was
 10 oute of ioynte, that he myght not stonde bot on oon foote—bot allway he putt his honde toward his sword, as he that was of grete corage and hardenes. Bot when that he sawe that he myght not stonde bot on oon foet, so Pontus thoght then that he wold not smyte hym; and said to hym, “Knyght, I
 15 see you in the febleſ *partie*, wherfore it weſ shame to assayle you.” And Geffray said vnto hym, “I holde me not yit discomefeted, in so myche that I may holde my sworde.” And so he payned hym to smyte Pontus, and Pontus leped by, and so he smote a stone with his goode swerd so fersly that he
 20 fell doune to the grounde.

Bot Pontus helped to releve hym and said to hym, “*Ser*, and ye weſ hole, I wold rynne vpon you, for I se wele by your worthenes ye wold not yelde you to me; bot ye shall yelde you to the fairest lady of Bretan, that wolle take you to
 25 hiſ *mercy*, and shall grete hiſ wele for the blak knyght. So, I pray yow, lete vs doo noo more, for we haue donne enughe; for I wote wele, and ye weſ hole, ye wold not soffre me to be so hole as I am; for I knowe your worthynes long agoo.” And when Geffray knewe the goodnes of hym, he prayes
 30 hym in his hertt, and said to hym, “*Ser*, I wolle go thedre as ye commaunde me, and if I wyst that I shuld not dysplease you, I wold wytt your name.” And Pontus answeyd, “Ye ne noon othre shall knowe itt yitt.”

Then Geffray wold aske ne enquer noo more of hym, and so
 35 toke leve of hym. Then the blak knyght went into the forest by his pathe ways, as he was wonte to doo.

And so the knyghtes and the people mervelled myche vpon the knyght when they sawe the batell, and said, ryght curtese was the blak knyght and gentle; and said iche of theym to othre, "Sawe ye not the grete benignite—howe that he wold
 5 not toveche the knyght, by cause he sawe hym hurte, and how he had two tymes releved hym?" Wherefore they made grete
 [*Fol. 178.] talkyng therof and * gave hym a grete lovyng.¹

And Geffray de Lazynyen, that myght not wele meve hym ne styrre hym, said to Landry de La Touŕ, "Fair frende, I
 10 wolle abyde vnto the nexte tuysday, for to bere you companye to se the faiŕ Sydon, bot if ye putt bettre remedy than I haue doon." Said Landry de La Touŕ, "Of aventure of armys theŕ may nooman iuge, they be so mervellous; and ye be noo thyng wars for this aventure, for this was by the fall of *your*
 15 hors, for the whiche may nooman kepe hym; and (I) thinke to haue noo shame, if I be suche a knyght as ye be founde in dedes of armys." And also they spake of Barnard de La Roche and of many thinges.

And then they toke Geffray de Lazynyen in the softest wyse
 20 that they myght and led hym to Mountford; and theŕ he was arrayd in suche wyse that he myght ryde vpon an hors-beŕ the tuysday next followyng, whiche was a faiŕ day and a clere.

[**Cap. XX.** How the third Tuysday Ponthus conquered Landry de La Toure and sent hym prisonner to the
 25 faire Sydones, and aftre, the Erle of Morteyn; and so euery Tuysday of the yere he sent a knyght of the best that was in the reaume. And of the grete feste that he made the Whissontyde at the yeres ende at the Welle of Mervelles.

30 **A**nd itt happed the same tuysday theŕ come of all contrees to se the batell. Then the blak knyght with armes white yssued oute of the pavyllone—he and his olde damesell

¹ R, *grant compte et grant loz*. W, *greete loos*. See Bradley-Stratmann for *lovyng*, "laudation."

- and his dwarfe, and on that otheṛ side come Landry de La Touṛ. So they laid theyṛ sperys vndre theiṛ sides, with theyṛ gonfaunons hyngyng, and with grete myght they stroke to gedre, withoute any faile; and passed ouer, and come agayne
- 5 so myght[e]ly that they perched¹ theiṛ sheldes, and brake theiṛ speres, and ranne to gedre with theiṛ swerdes, and gave grete strokes, wheṛ they myght, ofte and thyke. So they weṛ long tyme on hors bak. And then Ponthus dressed hym wele in his styropes and smote Landry de La Toure with all his
- 10 strenght, that he was astoned; and when Ponthus hade yeven hym that stroke, then he sawe hym gogle, and toke hym by the helmete and drewe with all his myght, and all astounded drewe hym doune to the grounde. Not withstondyng, he rosse vp as sone as he myght.
- 15 And when Ponthus sawe hym at the grounde, then said he to hym selfe that he wold not assayle hym on hors bak, lesse it myght turne hym to shame and reprove; bot then he lyght doune on foote and putt his shelde afore hym and toke his swerd in his honde and assayled hym. And Landry made
- 20 hym redy to defende hym in the best wyse that he myght, for he knewe wele that he hade not to doo with noo childe. Then Ponthus come and smote hym a grete stroke so that the stroke fell upon the scheld and stroke doune and quarter²; and Landry smote hym with grete strokes, wheṛ he myght areche
- 25 hym, and mervelled myche howe Ponthus myght endure agane hym so longe, for he was a mervellous goode knyght. Bot Ponthus gave hym ofte so grete strokes that *with* grete payne he myght vnneth drawe his brethe, ne Ponthus navtheṛ. And they rested theym a litle while on theyṛ swerdes.
- 30 Then spake Landry and said, "Gentle Knyght, I wote not what ye be, bot so myche may I say, that I wenyd not in the

¹ R, *percerent*.

² R, *Pontus fiert moult grant coup et le branc descend en lescu si que il en abat ung quartier*. W translates literally. Our translator appears to understand a quartering blow, possibly from another reading, or perhaps we should read *a* for *and*.

mornyng to haue founde so myche strenght and valu^r in you as I haue prevyd; bot or ye ouercome me, ye muste doo moo dedes of armes then ye haue doon." "Yea," said Ponthus, "avthe^r shal ye yelde you to the fairest made of Bretane, or
 5 elles ye must ouercome me with dedes of armys."

And then he lyfte vp his sworde and smote Landry, as he that had grete shame that he endured hym so longe, and he stroke hym in suche wyse that the bloode ranne doune to his fete. And when Landry felyd that he was so smyten, he
 10 gave Ponthus so grete a stroke vpon the temple of the hede
 [*Fol. 178^b.] that the helmete * was gretly enpared. Then turned Ponthus the sheld and toke the swerd in bothe his hondes and smote so grete a stroke that Landry was all astoned. Bot that was no mervell, for to long hade that batell endured between theym.
 15 And so he smote sore, stroke vpon stroke, that he was almost dysmated with the grete plente of strokes that he hade taken and gyven; and he hasted more and more when he sawe a litle gogyllyng,¹ and then he come and smote hym with all his myght in suche wyse that he bett hym to the grounde—
 20 and fell bothe two. Bot Ponthus fell aboue, and Landry myght not ryse ne helpe hym selfe.

And Ponthus said to hym, "Knyght, yelde you." And Landry spake noo worde and endured with grete payne, and as he that was lothe forto yelde hym. And he that was full
 25 of curtesey said, "Knyght, yelde you to the fai^r damesell, I pray you,—and that the^r be no more debate between vs, for we haue assayd authre othre enughe." Then knewe Landry the curtesy of the knyght that he faght with and said to hym, "To hi^r wolle I yelde me, sithe itt lykys you." "Itt is suffi-
 30 ciaunt to me," said Ponthus.

Then he rose full sore and full wery of the strokes and travell that he hade gyven and taken of the grete batell that so long hade endured. So come Ponthus to his hors with grete payne, and lepe vp, and rode faste into the forest, so that he
 35 was fro the syght of theym all anoon.

¹ R, *et quant il vit ung pou chanceler si le boutte.* W, *sawe hym staker.*

And Geffray de Lazynyen and many othre knyghtes come to Landry de Lay Touñ and asked hym howe he dyde; and he said, well—aftre the evyll that he hade founden his maistre. Then said Geffray to Landry, “I shall bere you companye,
 5 for ye and (I),¹ we wolle goo to gedre to the faiñ Sydone.”
 “I wolle wele,” said Landry, “for itt is no reason that ye goo thedre withoute me.” Thus they bourded oon to an otheñ. And then he was vnarmed and had mony woundes, bot he had noon bot that he myght ryde.

10 And so they went and yelded theym to Sydon. And the kyng made theym gret cheñ and did theym grete worschipp, as for the best knyghtes that myght be founde in any contrey, of nobylley of knyghthode. And sone aftre they went to Sydone and putt theym in hiñ mercy. And she, that was full
 15 of curtesey and of wysdome, receyved theym with grete ioy and fested theym and worschipped theym and gave theym grete gyftes. So they thonked hiñ, and said that they were wele prisoned, for itt was noo grete payne for to endure itt. “Serys,” said she, “I wot not what the knyght is that has
 20 sent you hidre—for ye and he doos me grete honour withoute cause; for ther be more fayrer and more avenaunt in this reaume than I be, who so wolle seke theyme.” “Wele Ma dame,” said they, “we owe to beleve the comon voice, for all has cosen you for the fayrest.” And thus they bourded of
 25 mony thynges. Ther they weñ twoo days with the kyng, and all the othre days wyth Sydon.

And aftre she gave theym leve to goo, and then they went furth to se the batell of the Erle Mortheyn, that was a full goode knyght.

30 Son aftre issued oute the damesell and the dwarfe, and had his Turquis bowe in his honde and the arowes. And the heremyte with the vysouñ, that lede the damesell aboute by the gylten reyne, made signe whiche schelde sche schuld smyte,
 [*Fol. 179.] as * for the next moneth folowyng. The damesell shote fyrste

¹ R, *nous yrons vous et moy ensemble*. W, *we shall go you & I togyder*.

the sheld of *Ser* Tybould de Boloys that was named a wele goode knyght; and that othre was the shelde of Guyllen de Roches; the third was the shelde of Henry de Mounte Morency; and the fourthe shelde was the sheld of Rosylyon.¹

5 Thes was iiij knyghtes of grete name of knyghthod, whoes scheldes weȝ hongen vp for the next iourney. And when she hade shote hiȝ fouȝ arowes, she withdrewe hiȝ into the pavyllon.

And son aftre the blak knyght issued oute of the pavyllone
 10 armed att all peeces, the shelde in the nek, the speȝ in his honde. In that othiȝ side come the Erle of Morteyne full rychely arrayd, with a grete multitude of mynstrells. And as son as they sawe aythre othre, they ranne to gedre with theyȝ sperys, and gave authre othre grete strokes. Bot Pon-
 15 thus reuersed the Erle, that he lakked bot a litle that he was doune. Then they putt theiȝ hondes to theyȝ swerdes and ranne to gedre full fersly. Bot Ponthus smote so grete a stroke that his sworde cutted that he smote; and the Erle defended hym at his poweȝ. So the batell dured longe. Bot
 20 Ponthus that was *mervellous*² toke hym by the helme, and drewe to hym so myghtely that he pulled hym doune to the grounde, and yeave hym a grete stroke with his sworde, and said to hym that he suld yelde hym—for he smote hym bot with the flatt of the sworde. And the Erle endured myche,
 25 bot at the last he must nedes yeld hym, whedre he wold or noo.

And thus he commaunded hym to yelde hym vnto the fairest ladye and madyn in Bretan; and so he departed and went into the forest as he was accostomed to doo.

30 And the Erle went and yelded hym vnto Sydone as the othre knyghtes had doone. And theȝ she dide hym grete worschip; and so did the kyng hiȝ fadre.

¹ MS. *Rosy lyon*.

² R, *qui grant et fort estoit a merueilles*. W, *which was grete and strong toke*. It is a temptation to throw in the *grete and strong* of W, after *mervellous*, but *mervellous* is often used independently in our text.

The nexte tuysday they faght agane; and so they did the next folowyng, to the monethe come to an ende. Bot itt weȝ to long to tell the batells and the iourneys that he dide—and that otheȝ parties also; for theȝ were many grete batells
 5 and many sharpe stowres of armes whiche weȝ to longe to tell, who wold all devyse. Bot all weȝ ouercomen by his dedes of armes and weȝ sent to prisoune to the faiȝ lady Sydone.

So was theȝ founde in the yeeȝ .liij. knyghtes prisonners, of
 10 the best that they knewe or myght fynde in any londe, to wynn or conquer worschipp; for euery of the beste knyghtes that herd therof went to assay hym; and then he chase of the beste knyghtes to doo dedys of armes with hym, and eueryche hade desiȝ to be of the nombre to assay theym *with*
 15 hym, in so myche that the high renowne ranne thorowe oute Fraunce and by many othre reaumes and contreys. And Pontus chase euer by reportyng the best, and faght neuer bot with oon of a contrey, whiche was holden for the beste;—forto make hym to be known, that if theȝ weȝ any man that
 20 wold requiȝ hym to doo any thyng for his lady sake, that he wold be redy alwey to delyuer hym. And theȝ was of the .liij. knyghtes propre names—that is to say: the Duke of Auerennes, the Duke of Loreyne; the Duke of Barry; the Erle of Mount Bernard,¹ the Erle of Mountford, and many othre
 25 erles and dukes; and Ser William de Baniers, Ser Arnold de Hennolte, the Erle of Saye, and many othre knyghtes; and of theyȝ names I passe ouer at this tyme and goo to my mater agayne.

[*Fol. 179^b.] When * itt befell that Wyttsunday was comen at the yeres
 30 ende—that² all prisonners come to yelde theym, theȝ as itt was ordayned, Pontus lete make a grete hall couered with grene boghes, by the Welle of Mervelles, otheȝ wyse called

¹ ms. *Mountbernard*.

² The same ellipsis is in W and R. R, *tant quil aduint que la penthecoste vint . . . que tous les prisonniers vindrent*.

Bellacon, and sent for all maner of vitelles and dyuers wyne, and wrote to the kyng a *lettre*, sayng thus :—

“To the goode kyng of Bretane the Blak Knyght *with* armys white recommaundes hym *with* all his *seruice* and
 5 honour. And *prays* hym mekely, that itt may please hym to be at this feste of Wytsonyde in the forest of Breselyne at the Welle of Mervelles, *with* the companye of the fairest ladys and dameselles of Bretane, to knowe to whome the pris shall be yeven and to enquiꝛ who has best iusted and who that has
 10 the beste and the myghtest foghten of thes .liij. knyghtes of euery tuysday in the yeꝛ.”

And when the kyng had red the *lettre*, he had grete ioy therat; and said that grete worshipp did hym the blak knyght and that he wold be theꝛ.

15 And then he sent for his doghtre and tolde hiꝛ thes tyth-ynges and charged hiꝛ to enquiꝛ of the fairest ladies and gentylwommen of his reaume to come with hiꝛ at the feste of Wytsonyde;—“and faiꝛ doghtre,” said the kyng, “ye aghte forto doo itt, for he has doon you myche worship; for by his
 20 swerd he has sent to youꝛ *prisoune* so many goode knyghtes and lordes, wherof grete worschip is comen to you and to youres and to all ouꝛ reaume; wherfore I am myche beholden to the blak knyght.” Faiꝛ Sydone kneled doune and said, sith it liked hym, so sche wold doo his *commaundement*.

25 And then she lete write to the grete ladyes of Bretayne, that they schuld be redy on the Wytsonyde even, and that they shuld bryng with theym the fayrest ladys and gentylwomen that they myght fynde in theyꝛ contrey. The ladys at hiꝛ *commaundement* hade grete ioy and arrayd theym and
 30 come at the day. Theꝛ was ryght grete assembley that come at the Wytsonyde to the Welle of Mervelles. So they broght with theym tentes and pavyllones, and dide .hyng theym and pyght theym aboute, in suche wyse that it semed a grete oste.

Ponthus furth before the kyng come ryght sone—and had
 35 sent xiiij govnes of a suyte to his xiiij fellowes, and oon to Herland the senysshall, and had sent to fetch theym the day before. It is noo demaunde to aske if that his cosyn

germane and his fellowes had grete ioy of the worschipp that God had yeven to hym. They went aganes the kyng. And when the kyng sawe and knewe that it was Pontus that so many fetys of armes hade done, it is noo questyon bot he made
 5 grete ioy. And at the feste and worschipp that he dyde hym, he myght not forber bot that he called hym, & kyssed hym, and said, "Wheȝ haue ye ben so longe hyd frome vs. It was said that ye weȝ in Poleyne and Hungary in the werre; bot in travthe myn herтт said euer that itt was ye that so many
 10 meruelles did." Pontus waxed rede and said noo worde, for he was sory that the kyng prased hym so myche.

Therefore he went his way aganes Sydone—grete was the company *with* hiȝ of ladys and of gentyllwommen¹—

And

15 salewed her mekely | & she yelded him agayne his saluacyon | as she that had all Ioye ^ȝ herte myght thynke | & than she sayd vnto hȝ smylunge O Pontus ye haue hyd you lōge tyme frō vs in this forest I doute me ^ȝ ye be become an ermyte & wylde. A madame

20 Pon.

G. iiij.

[*] sayd he saue your grace I am easy to tame. And than he departed frome her as he that was all taken in the loue of his lady that of lōge tyme he had not sene her And than he wente too se the ladyes the whiche were
 25 all dysguysed with grene bowes & garlondes | and he sayd vnto them. My ladyes I praye god that eche of you haue that ^ȝ your hertes desyre | for in good fayth it is a good syght to se soo fayre a company. The lady

¹The Digby ms. has an omission corresponding to about a page and a third (ms.) of text at this point, though the ms. shows no break of any sort between *gentyllwommen* and *And furth* (p. 60, l. 14). It is highly improbable that we have to do with deliberate condensation—far more likely that the scribe copied from a smaller ms. that had lost a leaf. F has two chapter divisions in this space which might have been marked by miniatures in a ms. of its class, thus suggesting a motive for the mutilation of the ms. before the scribe of Digby. I have filled the gap with the corresponding portion of W, printed diplomatically. The French mss. R, H, and F contain all this matter.

es yelded hym his salutacyon | the whiche were full of
 Ioye for to se hym for they loued hym meruayllously
 well aboue all knyghtes. And the one sayd to another
 It is Ponthus the good and fayre knyghte thanked
 5 be god of the grete worshyp that he hath sente hym
 and I praye god that he wyll kepe hym vs as the best
 knight of the worlde | and this was there speche ferre
 and nere. So they arrayued at the fountayne bothe y
 kynge and the ladyes | with grete Ioye. And on that
 10 other syde came the knyghtes straungers. The kyn-
 ge and the ladyes made them grete Ioye. And there
 was grete sowne and noyse of dyuers maners of mý-
 stralsy so that all the wode ronge of it. And the kynge
 and ponthus dyd grete worshyp to the dukes and lor-
 15 des | as to the duke of Ostrytche of Lorayne & of bar
 | & to the erle of dampmartyn of Sauoye of moût-
 belyart & to other dyuers grete lordes. So they wente
 and herde masse that the bysshop of Rennz sange | af-
 ter that they came to the halle. And the kynge | the du-
 20 kes and Sydoynes were sette at the hygh dese | and af-
 ter euery man after as he was. Greate was the feest
 and grete was the hall | and on the syde were hanged
 the .lii. sheldes of the knyghtes conquered. Ryght stra-
 unge and fayre thynges were made bytwene the cour-
 25 [*] ses as armed chyldren that fought togyder | & dyuers
 other thynges | and syxe olde knyghtes | and syxe olde
 squyers | some bare the spere & the gouffanon blacke
 with the whyte teeres of grete margaretes & oryente
 perles | & a ryche cerele of golde meruayllously wrou-
 30 ght of ryche perles and of good stones. The other bare
 the ryche swerde with the ponel of golde | And the
 gyrdell of sylke wrought with golde & grete margare-
 tes and perles | & with precyous stones that it was a
 fayre syght to se. And this rychesse had ponthus won
 35 in the shyp of the Soudans sone. So he sayd hymself
 that he myght no better beset them than afore so ma-

ny notable prynces and grete lordes | for he shewed all
his dedes ryght honourably. The knyghtes and þe ladyes
wente aboute the halle synge as though they wiste not to
whome they sholde presente them. And
15 than they came before the lorde de Lesygnen and presented
hym the spere and the ffouffanon (sic) and the ryche
cercle of golde þe whiche they set vpon his hede | for þe
beste Iuster. And after they came to Androwe de la
toure and presented hym the ryche swerde and the ry-
10 che crowne set vpon his heed | whyther he wolde or no
for he excused hymselfe moche & wende to haue refused
it saynge that they dyde hym worshyp that he had not
deserued and that there were dyuerse other that had
better wonne it than he had and he wexed rede &
15 was ashamed | but Pontius hadde so ordeyned it for
he sayd in good fayth that he had yeuen hym moost a
do as fore one daye. Also Geffrey hadde ryght wel Ius-
ted. Than beganne mynstrelles for to playe of all maner
of mynstrelsy and also the herauldes began to cry
20 that men sholde not haue herde thondrynge | for al rō-
[*] ge bothe wood and forest of the noyse. There was gy-
uen many dyuerse meases and good wyne and also
grete yeftes vnto herauldes and mynstrelles. Ponthus
came behynde the kynge and sayd to hym in his ere.
25 Syr & it please you we shall do crye the Iustes ayenst
to morowe | and on tewe-daye at Vennes bycause þe
ye sholde knowe these prynces | and these dukes | for it
shall be your worshyppe. A sayd þe kyng in good fayth
it is a good and a trewe counseill and I praye you
30 that it be done. Than Pontius called an heraulde and
made hym to crye that the whyte knyght with the re-
de rode (sic, rose) shall be this mondaye and tewe-daye in þe cy-
te of Vennes with fyue felowes and hymselfe shall
make the syxte for to withstande all maner of knygh-
35 tes with speres. And he that shall haue the pryce on þe
mondaye without forth (sic) shall haue the gyrdell and the

gypser of y^e fayrest of the feest. And he that dooth best
 on the tewesdaye shall haue the sparohawke mewed
 with the loynes of perles and margarytes | and a cha
 pelet that the fayrest of the feest shall gyve hym. And
 5 he of the ynnr partye that shall Iuste best shall haue
 a rynge of the fayrest.

¶ How Ponthus made a Iustes to be cryed in the cy-
 te of Vennes and how he smote downe the strongest
 that he recountred.

10 **O**N y morowe after they departed by tymes | &
 wente and herde masse at saynt peters of Ven-
 nes | and than they wente and dyned | and after dyner
 the kynge & the ladyes wente to the schalfoldes.

¹And furth with come Ponthus and his v fellowes whiche was
 15 named, Barnard de La Roche, the Vicount of Lyon, the
 Vicount of Daunges, Pollides,² and Herland. And Ponthus
 was all in whyte bothe [he] and his hors, with a grete rede
 rose whiche signified his lady. The iustys we^r grete and the
 dedes of armes, bot aboue all othre Ponthus iusted beste, for
 20 he threwe doune hors and man and did so mervellously that
 euery man doubted to cowntre hym. Also he putt his hertt
 and his wyll to gedre for his lady sake that was before hym.

[*Fol. 180.] * Grete and litle prased hym myche. And then spake the
 ladys and said, "See ye hym the^r that berys all doune before
 25 hym? He is not wyse that comes aganes hym. His spe^r
 spares noon, bot itt hurtes and makes theym to fall." Sydone,
 that herde the ladys prays hym, said noo worde, and she loked
 that noo man perceved the gladnes of hi^r ne the ioy that she
 hade in hi^r hertt.

30 Right wele iusted the Duke of Averences, and the Duke of
 Loreyne, and the Erle of Savye, the Erle of Mount Belliart,
 and mony othre. It we^r to long to tell of the goode iusters

¹ MS. Digby resumes.

² MS. Polleyne. R, *polides*. W, *Polydes*.

that iusted the moneday and the tuysday. And they weȝ wele fested the tuysday at mete and at sopeȝ. The pris of monday was yeven to the Erle of Mounthe Belliart. He hade the gyrdle and the gypseȝ of Sydone—for she was chosen for the fairest.

- 5 The price of the tuysday was yeven to the Duke of Averences. And he hade the sparhawke *with* the ryche loynes and the chaplete, of Sydone. Bot not withstondyng, Pontus iusted the best; and wold take noon of the prices, in so myche that he ordaned theym. Bot the ladys sent to hym a
10 ryng *with* a rubye, for the most worschipfull knyght that was of theym all; also they sent to Barnard de La Roche a riche goweȝ.¹

Then heroudes and mynstrelles made grete ioi and grete noyse. And aftre sopeȝ they hade carralles, daunces, and
15 songys to mydnyght. And aftre they dranke and ete spyces. And aftre the straungers toke theyȝ leve of the kyng and of Sydone and of [the] othre ladys, and departed.

- The wedynsday erely aftre messe Pontus convehed theym² to Castellyon,³ wheȝ he hade lete ordayne theyȝ dynneȝ; and
20 aftre dynneȝ wold haue convehed theym—bot the lordes wold not soffre hym. So he offred hym myche to theym, and toke leve eueryche of othre. Gretely prased bothe the grete and the small the goode cheȝ and fellyschipp of Pontus—and that⁴ they trowed that he was the beste, the fairest, the most
25 curtes, and the most *gracius* knyght of the worlde, to theyȝ intente, and that he hade noo fellowe. And also they prased gretly Sydone of hiȝ beautie and of hiȝ curtesy—and that⁵ he were ryght fortunate that myght haue hiȝ.

¹ The word is doubtful, but has clearly something to do with M. E. *gorgere*. O. F. *gorgiere*. R, *fermail*. W, *ouche*.

² MS. *hym*. W, *them*.

³ R, *a chasteau guyon*. W, *to y^e castell of gyron*.

⁴ An elliptical construction like that in W, *prasyed . . . Pontus . . . and that trewly he was*—but cf. R, *Et disoient vrayement cest le meilleur . . . cheualier*.

⁵ Both W & R show the ellipsis: *prasyed . . . Sydone . . . and that he that sholde haue her sholde be well eurous, louaient S. . . et que bien seroit eurous qui*.

[**Cap. XXI.** How Sydone made grete ioy that she sawe agane Ponthus. And how Guenelete, that had grete envy at his maistre, accused Ponthus to the kyng, that he loved Sydone to hiȝ dishonur.]

5 **P**onthus turned agane to the kyng and to the ladys. And the knyghtes of Bretane toke leve of the kyng and of his doghtre. So the kyng and his doghtre come huntyng¹ and playng by the way. So on a tyme spake Sydon and Ponthus to gedre. Then said Sydon, "Long tyme haue ye
10 keped you frome vs full secrete, and we gretly mervelled that we herde no thyng frome you." "Ma dame," said he, "I sent you euery woke a knyght in stede of a messynger." "Ye say sothe, my swete loue. Ye sent the moste noble messyn-
15 doone me more goode to haue knowen who hade sent theym to me, for euery body said that ye weȝ goon into Hungarye; so I was gretly amervelled that ye gave noon othre knowleche of youȝ gooyng. Wherefore myn hertt was full hevy." "Ay, Madame," said he, "I was full nyghe you and so was myn
20 hertt and thoght. And all that I did, I thoght to doo itt for youȝ honour and to encrease youȝ goode renoune, for I wyst wele that ye shuld be chosen for the fairest in Bretane. So I haue doone so myche, that the best knyghtes that myght be
25 youȝ mercy. Bot in goode faithe Madame, it was not I, that dide the adventures of armes, bot it was ye; wherof I thonke youȝ goode ladyshipp—for the myght and the hardenes that I haue, I haue itt of you, for of my selfe I couthe not vndre-
[*Fol. 180^b.] take itt." "Ponthus," said she, "I knowe wele that this
30 goodnes and worshipp comes to you * frome Gode and frome noon otheȝ. The cause is that ye loue God and dredys hym,

¹ *Huntyng* is strange, but I have no reasonable emendation. R, *Et le roy sen vint esbatant, lui et sa fille vers susinio*. W, *came syngyng & sportyng theym towarde syclynere*. Digby omits the name of their place of destination.

and therfor he gyfes you that grace and hardenes; and so¹ ye shuld [thynke] how¹ to thonke Gode." "Ma dame," said he, "so I doo; bot I trowe that the *entrepris* comes of you." "Now Pontus," said she, "leve we thes wordes, for in goode
 5 *faithe* the gladdest tythandes that myn hert myght haue, was to he^r goode tydynges of you—as longe as I fynde you trewe to kepe my worshipp and my lordes my faders." "Ma dame," said he, "therof truste ye verrely; for I hade levyr be deid then to have thoght othre wyse, by my *faithe*."

10 And vpon thes wordes come oon of his xiiij fellowes, called Guenelete, whiche was named full envious and a *faîr speke^r* and a grete *flaterer^r*, and hade grete envye at his maistre Pontus. And at that tyme the^r was noo *grette maistre* in the contre then he. So he see the kyng olde, and thoght by *faîr*
 15 *speche* and *flattery* that he wold be maistre: and so he thoght to aloigne his maystre Pontus, whiche was full secrete with the kyng; and he thoght, if that he myght a litle enstraunge hym fro that courte, that he shuld then be maistre and most *privey* with the kyng.

20 Thus he couthe not refreyne hym selfe fro dooyng of treson. And so he sawe the kyng allone in a wode, wher as hunted he;² and so he said vnto hym, "Ser, I wolle telle you a grete counsell, so that ye wold ensure me and make *protestacon* trewly, by a kynges worde, that ye shall not dyscouere me." Said the
 25 kyng, "I swe^r and promys you faithfully that I shall not dyscouere you." Then Guenelete said, "My ryght gude Lorde, ye haue noryshed me, and all the goode that I haue, comes of youre goode grace; so I haue cause to loue you more then my fadre, or modre, or all the worlde. Wherefore myn hert may
 30 not soffre you^r harme ne dyshonour; and not withstondyng I loue Pontus more than any thyng bot you, for sothe itt is this,—that Pontus loues my lady you^r doghtre. Whereof I make you wyse, for he is a full *faîr knyght*; so I doute lest

¹ MS. so she shuld and how. I emend by changing *she* to *ye*, inserting *thynke* to complete *shuld*, and dropping *and*. W, so ye ought for to thanke hym hyghly. R, si len deuez moult mercier.

² MS. he was. Om. was.

any fouuysch love be betwen theym, wherof ye myght haue shame or dyshonour." "Ay," said the kyng, whiche thought noo thyng bot goode, "Guenelete I see wele that ye loue me and that ye wold not my dyshonour. I am beholden to you
 5 at all tymes and thonkes you gretly herof." And thus the kyng thonked hym, as he that wenyd that he had said him trauth. And Guenelete said, "My Lorde, ye shuld not thonke me, for I be so myche beholden vnto you that ther is noo thyng that a mortall man (myght do) for you? Lordeship bot that I
 10 wold doo itt, if I shuld dye therfore, forto lenght you? live, if nede we?; and Ser, I wold tell you howe ye myght best preve hym, and he say that he loues hi? not,—bid hym make an othe thervpon, and peraventure ye shall see that he wolle not swe?."

And so Guenelete herde Ponthus say that in the parties of
 15 Spayne noo kynges sone shuld make noon othe to credaunce, whylst that he myght fyght—and if he dide, he we? dyshonored; and therfore he said the same to the kyng, for he wyst wele that he wold not swe?; and therfore by that maner he wold attempe hym, and by thoos meanes to enstraunge hym.¹

20 [Cap. XXII. How the kyng required an othe of Ponthus; and he, that myght not swere, offred hym to fyght with thre or with four. And how Ponthus wold not abyde in the courte in mystruste and in susspeccion, bot toke leve of Sydone for vij yerres.]

25 The kyng was thoghtfull of the tythyng, as he that mer-
 vellously lovyd his doghtre and he that had grete drede of his dyshonour; and when he was comen fro the wodd and lyghted doune fro his palfrey, so furth with come Ponthus,
 [*Fol. 181.] wenyng to haue taken his swerd and his gloves as he was
 30 accustomed. Then the kyng turned hym an othre * way and

¹ R and W have an additional sentence. *Et par ce il . . . lestrangeroit de la court, car nul enuieulx ne peut riens souffrir. for to estraunge hym from the countree for to haue the more rule gadered in to his owne hande | for an envious man may no thyng suffice.*

nawthre made to hym countenaunce ne spake. And when Pontus perceyved that he was wrothe to hym, he said, "Ser, be ye wrothe with me? Say to me, if it like you, for Goddes loue, what I haue forfeited." And the kyng, which was right
 5 wrothe of suche fals informacion, said, "Pontus I haue made a simple nurture in you, when ye wate to dyshonour me." "Howe Ser?" said Pontus, "By what way?" Then said the kyng, "For ye loue my doghtre to dyshonour me. And I haue noomoo children bot hiȝ, whiche is all my ioy
 10 and the lengthyng of my life." "Ser," said he, "Who said you this? And theȝ be any man that dare say itt, or mayntene itt, I am redy to shew my body that he lyes falsly—save your worshipp." "Nay," said the kyng, "bot and ye wolle sweȝ vpon a messe-booke that ye loue hiȝ not as I haue said,
 15 peraventure I wolle leve you." "Ser, for to say that I loue hiȝ not as the doghtre of my ryght goode lorde—afte my dutye, I owe not to say; bot if theȝ be any man that wolle say that I loue hiȝ to dyshonour you or hiȝ, in wylle, dede, or in thocht, I shall answer as a true knyght shuld doo. And
 20 Ser ye knowe wele, othre thing ye shuld not disiȝ of me, your worshipp saved, for ye wote wele that noo kynges sonne shuld make noon othe of fals vndirstondyng, whils that he may defende hym with his hondes. And suche is the custome of the contre whiche I am of." "I wote not howe itt is,"
 25 said the kyng, that was ryght wrothe of the wordes that he held.¹ "Ser," said Pontus, which was right sory, "I offere me to feght with thre or four; for I fele myn hert so sure and so true that I am certan that God wolle helpe, as he is true Iuge of this dede and of all othre." "Ay," said the
 30 kyng, "ye hold you so strong and so knyghtly, that ye wote wele that theȝ (dare)² no man feght with you." "Ay Ser," said Pontus, "offere me to doo that thyng that I may doo to

¹ The emendation *herd* is probable, but *held* makes good sense, regarding *Pontus* as the subject of the clause—*le roy, qui moult fel estoit des paroles, qu'il auoit ouyes*. W, *had herde* keeping the construction of R.

² R, *nul n'oseroit combatre*.

saue my worschipp." The kyng passed ouer and said theȝ shuld no batell be doon for that dede.

And when Ponthus herd this, he was ryght sory and wrothe. By cause that he was a kynges sonne, he had shame to make
 5 the othe that turnyd hym to shame; and that othiȝ side, he was sory be cause that the kyng wold doo hym noo ryght. And then he come to the kyng and toke his leve and said that he wold byde no lenger in his courte in mystruste ne in susspeccion.

10 So he departed and come to Sydone and told hiȝ how the kyng had said to¹ hym, and howe the kyng wold not doo hym ryght, and howe that he had offred hym to feght with thre or fouȝ, and how that he wold putt hym to his othe, to his grete shame and dishonuȝ. And when Sydone herd this
 15 and vndirstode itt, it nedes not to aske if that she had any sorowe in hiȝ hertt; for she was so sorofull that she was almuste loste. And when she myght speke, she said, "Ay Lorde Godde, who be [thes]² traitours and flatterers that so myche fals lyhyng has founde?—for in goode faithe, I wolle
 20 swere on the sacrament, that theȝ is noo vyllanye thoght in ouȝ loue. Bot sothely it is,³ that envy may not dye."

"Ma dame," said Ponthus, "ye say sothe. Bot I wolle take leve of you with suche regrete and sorowe as euer knyght did, and toke, of his lady." "Ay," sayd she, "my swete loue, me
 25 semes it weȝ bettere for to sweȝ, for ye may doo itt surely, and excuse vs." "Ay Ma dame," sayd he, "I dare not be seen in my contrey, if I dide soo; and God graunte I be not the first kynges sonne that makes the furste othe, for at all tymes itt suld be reproche to me and to myn heyers. Bot Ma dame, not
 30 withstondyng thoghe the body proloynne for a while, the hertt⁴ [*Fol. 181^b.] shall day and nyght * dwell with you. And if it please God,

¹ MS. after *to*, *hir* cancelled by the rubricator.

² W, *these*. R, *ces*.

³ R, *Mais ainsi est*. W, *But thus it is*.

⁴ The scribe has run down a flourish from this word into the lower margin of the Fol. inclosing in it a heart.

at the ende of vij yer I shall see you agane, and I live, bot if I come herfte;¹ and if itt like you to kepe you vnmarried vnto that tyme—if ye may—I wold pray you.” “Ay,” said she, “the *terme* is long and farre. And how many sorofull days
 5 and nyghtes shall be betwen you and me in the meane tyme!” And with thes wordes she fell in swone and was all discolored. Thus was the hertes of theym bothe so sore knytt² to gedre that *with* grete payne they myght vnnes any thyng say, bot [th]at³ they cleped aythre othre and the terys fell doune from
 10 theiŕ eeyn.

Then Pontius putt his hooide afore his eyne, and departed and went frome hiŕ vnto his chaumbre, and shutte the doore vpon hym. And then his hertt beganne to swell and said to hym selfe that he was the *mervellest* knyght livyng; that for
 15 hym that lady myght receyve blame or shame *with* oute cause; and on that side,⁴ he losys all wordly ioy, when he losys the contrey and the syght of hiŕ, of the whiche he has bot litle *recoueryng*. And thus he complenys hym and wementys hym ryght sorofully. And when he hade ben a while in that
 20 sorowe, then he comforted hym selfe to make goode cheŕ and refrenyd hym selfe ryght myche.

And if he hade sorowe in his hertt, Sidone had as myche; for she entred into hiŕ warderop and called Ellious vnto hiŕ, and when she sawe that theŕ was noon bot they twoo and that
 25 they weŕ alloone, then beganne hiŕ sorowe, so grete and so *mervellous*, that it was pitee to see. “Ay,” said she, “my swete love goos a way—the fair, the goode, the floure of knyghthode and of curtesy, and the beste that leyys and the best manerd and enteched aboute⁵ all *maner* of estates and

¹ I read clearly *herfte*, which I fail to understand, in the ms. Some word meaning earlier is required. R, *se plus tost ne revien*. W, *yf soner I come not*. | Is it possibly *herste* (illogical *h* and long *s*) for *erste*.

² ms. after *knytt*, W, cancelled by the rubricator.

³ The conj. *at* may be a genuine colloquial form, that has slipped into the text. W, *saue onely that*.

⁴ R, *Et dautre part*. W, *And also he leseth*.

⁵ R, *En tous estas*. W, *among*.

among all maner of people—and that is goode reson that he be so, for he loues God, dredes hym, and worshippes hym ; and has the olde and the wyse in reuerence. He is humble to the moste and to the leste ; he is myrroure of all noblenes and
 5 largenes ; his swete hertt is gentle, humble, and debonere. What shall myn hertt doo aftre his departyng, bot langoure, and weymente day and nyght, withoute any ioy or reste?—for I knowe wele his swete hertt wolke haue no lesse.”

Then she toke Ellious by the harme hastily and furth with
 10 fell to the grounde in swone. And Ellious weped, and arased¹ hiȝ lady with a litle water, and confortd hiȝ in the best wyse that she myght ; bot it avayled hiȝ not, she was so sory. And then she said to Ellious, “ I may not in noo wyse kepe my hertt ne counsell close frome you, so myche I loue and trustes
 15 you. Bot love, this sorowe comys on me when I thinke² the grete vntrauthe that has ben putt vpon vs, and that we neuer thought vyllany, for mor trueȝ loue was neuer between two persons ; and aftre, I thinke the wordes³ that he said of grete wrong, and that for me he loses the contrey wheȝ he was so
 20 wele beloued of grete and small, and all the evyll that he shal soffre and haue shall be for my sake ; and thus I shall be cause of his myschief. All thes thinges drives sorowe to myn hertt.” Gretly she wemented and aftre dryed hiȝ eyn. And itt was long or she come to the chaumbre of astate among hiȝ
 25 ladys and gentylwommen ; and made no semelance, bot as it greved hiȝ bot a litle. She was right wyse and wele couthe kepe hiȝ contenance. The ladys and the gentylwommen weped and wemented of the departyng of Ponthus and said that cursed was he that suche falsed fonde and contrevded.
 30 Bot Sydon reconforted theym full gentlylly and womanly.

And thus I turne agane to Ponthus.

¹ R, *et Eloix pleure et arouse sa dame*. *Arased* then means “sprinkled,” Fr. *arroser*. W shows a combination of a curious blunder and a correct translation: *toke rose water and bespryncked her lady*.

² R, *ie pense la grant desloyaulte* translated slavishly. W, *thynke on*.

³ R, *ie pense les paroles*. W, *thynke on*.

[**Cap. XXIII.** How Pontius departed from the courte and saled to England; and how the kynges sonne of England, that was called Henry, welcomed hym and toke hym to the courte wher as he was ryght wele cherysed.

5 And how the kyng of Irland made werre vpon theym, and Pontius toke hym prisonner; and aftre councelled theym to make peace betwen the reaumes, and the kyng of Irland to wed the kynges doghtre of England.]

10 **P**ontius called his chaumberlayne, a squyer, and commaunded hym to trusse and to putt in males all that was nede, and toke leve of euery persone of the courte. So was ther noon bot they made sorowe for his departyng and weped; and euery man and womman had as myche sorowe and doyll in ther hertt as the[i] wold haue hade, iff all they
15 frendes had ben deid—so myche they loued hym.

Then he departed from the courte; and the barounes, the knyghtes, and who so euer myght lepe on hors bak conveyd hym wepyng, and wenyd varelly to have witholden hym with fair language, sayng, that the kyng was olde and not wyse,
20 and that he shuld not take to hert that that he said. Bot he wold not abyde for all they language.

And when they had conveyd hym twoo myles, he aboode and prayd theym to turne agane; and so he made theym to turne a gane, whedre they wold or not. In takyng leve was
25 wepyng enughe.

So they retourned and made grete sorowe for his departyng, sayng, "Ay Bretan, thou oughte to be dysmated and wepyd:¹ when the fair, the goode, the most worshipfull knyght takes his leve, the whiche keped theym in peace and ioy; for he
30 keped theym, as the hen did hir byrdes vndre hir weng, from all evyll neghboures and aduersaries. The barounes and the people also wepyd and regreted, in cursyng theym that the fals wordes had founde and contrevyd.

¹Adj. in the sense of sorrowful, for *biwepyd*. R, *bretaigne tu dois bien plourer*. W, *thou oughtest wele to wepe*.

Ponthus rode to Sainte Malo de l'Ysele,¹ and thedre made come a shipp, and on the morowe herd messe, and afre went to take the see. And so Herland the senysshall and his fel-
 lawes wenyd to haue goone *with* hym; bot he wold not soffre
 5 theym, and said, that the kyng had norysshed theym and made
 theym,² and that he myght doo theym, myche goode; and ther-
 fore he counselled theym for to abyde styll with the kyng.
 And thus with grete payne they departed frome hym full
 sorofully and toke leve of hym wepyng. And when the shipp
 10 was oute of theyr sight, then began theyȝ doyll and theiȝ grete
 sorow—bot if itt weȝ Guenelete, which made semelante as he
 had wepyd, and was no dele sory, bot hade grete ioy in his
 hert inwarde, what cheȝ so euer that he shewyd outewarde.

And Ponthus went his way, and thus he losys the syght of
 15 Bretan. Then the teres fell doune frome his eyne, and softly
 said, "Blessed be Bretane and the faiȝ, the goode, the [most]
 trusty, that lyues³—Sydone, and all othre ladys and gentyl-
 wommen for loue of hiȝ and goode knyghthode, for I neuer
 sawe ne hard of noon⁴ better."⁴ Grete sorowe then his hertt
 20 had for Sydone. Not withstondyng, he keped his sorowe in
 the most covert wyse that he couthe or myght.

And within a whyle he arryved at Hampton and come
 rydyng toward London. And theȝ passed by the way a grete
 bore; and a grehounde toke the bore; and then Ponthus with
 25 his sworde clove hym in the myddys in twoo peces. And Ser
 Henry the kynges sonne sawe the stroke and had grete mervell
 therof; and prayd hym to dwell with hym. And Ponthus
 graunted hym.

¹ MS. *lysele*. R, *saint malo*. W, *saynt Solo* (*sic*).

² W, *And y^t he was of power to make them & doo them good*. R, *le roy les auoit nourris et fais et leur feroit des biens assez*.

³ MS. *loues*. I emend the passage following R, *benoist soit bretaigne*. *Et la belle et la plus loyale qui viue et la meilleur*.

⁴ MS. *more bittre*. Cf. W, *for better nor sweter was there neuer*. Both English versions depart from R's, *Car onques plus doulx pays [Bretaigne] ne feust*. The emendation may appear somewhat heroic, but clearly there is confusion in the passage as it stands.

And the kynges sonne enquired of his estate. And he told hym not as yete, bot tolde hym that he was comen to the courte of Englonde to see itt, by cause of the grete renoune that he herd of the kyng, and of his twoo sonnes; and that
 5 he come also to see the estate and noblenes of the same contre and reaume. "Ser," said Henry, "ye be ryght welcome. And I be oon of the kynges sonnes, and I pray you to be with me."
 "Ser, in Godes name, savyng that it pleasee yow."

[*Fol. 182.] Thus they wente to gedre toward the courte, spekyng of
 10 mony thynges.¹ * And when they come to the courte, the kyng was even² sett to mete. Henry commaunded his men that they shuld delyuere chaumbre and stable to his newe knyght. And itt was so doon. The kynges sone entred into the hall and his knyghtes *with* hym. The kyng asked hym
 15 howe he had hunted and the quene bothe. And he tolde theym. Then the kyng asked hym *prively* what was the fair knyght. And he tolde hym howe he had hym founde, and of the grete stroke that he gave the bore. And Pontius was gretly loked vpon, for on euery syde they come to beholde
 20 hym, and hade grete mervell of hym.

The courte was anon full of the tithynges that ther was comen with the kynges sonne the fairest knyght that euer any man loked vpon. The ladys and gentylwomen beheld hym, and in especiall the kynges twoo doghters. Eueryche of theym
 25 said, "Se heȓ, a mervellous fair knyght!" "Yea," said sune, "if he be feyȓ, he is more amyable and plesaunt." They made hym sitt among the ladys, and afre dynner they went furth of the hall; and then was broght furth the bore, whiche was the bore that they had sen before, whiche was cutt in twoo peces.
 30 "Loo!" said Henry to the kyng and to the quene, "what my newe knyght has doone *with* oon stroke of a swerde." And Pontius turned hym an othre way and shamed that they prased hym so myche.

¹ The -es is nearly erased.

² R, *le roy estoit ia assis a disner*. W, *ye kyng was set at dynner*.

The kyng and the quene asked hym of whens that he was. And he said, of the reame of Fraunce. "And what call they you?" said the kyng. "Ser, they call me Le Surdite de Droyte Voy." And so they asked hym of the tydynges of Fraunce, 5 and of mony thynges. And the kyng herde hym so wysely spoken and answeyng, that he gretly mervelled. Then he said to the quene, that he had not herd a *bettre* avysed ne *bettre* attempted in language then he was—"and for sothe myn hertt yeves me that he is grettre of byrthe, and more 10 noble, then he makes hym." And thus they tarried a grete whyle; and the more that they sawe hym, the more they loued hym and prased hym.

Grete doylle made the kynges eldest sonne that he had not the furst mett with hym, before his brodre Henry; for Pon- 15 thus knewe notably of all *maner* games—of huntyng, of hawkyng, and othre disportes; and euer he made as thoghe he knewe no thyng, ne he prased neuer hym self in nothyng that he dide. Gretly was prased his connyng and his *maners* among all the people. He loued God and the chirche, and 20 euery day he herd messe; and gave his almus secretly to the pouere people. And he wold neuer sweȝ by God ne by noon of his saintes.

Uppon a day itt befell that the Erle of Gloucestre sonne, which was a ryght fair knyght and a strong, and was right 25 presumptuous, cast the stoone *with* the kynges sonne Henry, and mony othre noble knyghtes that was ther. And he hade passed Ser Henry nygh four fyngers, and he *avaunted* hym selfe therof before the ladys. And of his boste Ser Henry was evyll plesyd, and called Ponthus to hym and said, "Surdyte 30 my frende, I pray you to revenge me, for Rolande Gloucestre makes his boste afore the ladys that he has passed me to myche."¹ "Ser," said Surdyte, "sith it please you, I wolle, bot I am vnlykly." Then he toke the stone of his maistre and caste itt easly frome hym, and passed hym negh by twoo

¹ R, *se vente . . . qu'il m'a passe de trop.*

fyngers. Then the thothre² toke the stone and reforced hym and did so myche that he caste as farre. "Ay," said Ser Henry, "by the faithe that ye owe to the lady that ye beste loue in the worlde, caste itt as farre as ye may."

[*Fol. 183.]

5 And when he herd hym thus require * hym, he remembred hym of his lady, and toke the stone, and said, "Ser, ye haue sore required me, for I owe grete feithe to my lady, my modre." "Ay," said Gener the kynges eldist doghtre, "be ye so myche waxen, and be to seche with ladys vnto now?"¹ "Ma dame,"
10 said he, "I am so fonde and bustus that noon deynes to loue me." "God knowes that itt is trewe," said Gener. And then she said in hiȝ herтт, "Now wolde Gode that he wold loue me as wele as I loue hym."

And then Surdyte toke the stonne and cast it vij fote ferthre.
15 And when the kyng and the ladys sawe the cast, they mervelled therof gretly. The Erle sonne of Gloucestre was abasshed and said that he was ouercomen. Then said Henry to Surdyte, "Why haue ye so longe abyden to cast that grete caste?" "Ser," said he, "and ye hade not so sore desired me, I wold
20 not haue melled therwith, for I haue doone the Erle sonne of Gloucestre dyspleseȝ—and that dysplese me, if it weȝ not to fullfyll youȝ commaundment; for it longes not to me to dysplese any man." So his maistre sawe wele the curtesy of the knyght.

25 So come Gener to hiȝ brothre Henry, and said, "Fair brothre come and sporte you in my chaumbre, ye and youȝ knyght, I pray you." "Sustre," said he, "I wolle." And so they went to dysporte theym in hiȝ chaumbre. There they had wyne and spices and afre they begane to daunce and
30 syng. Bot with grete payne they myght vnnethe make Sur-

¹ Apparently a case of "tother," dentals are irregular in this MS., so I have let it stand.

² W, *Surdyt Surdyt* | it may not be that ye be now | vnpurchased and be so moche & so goodly. R, *Sourdit, Sourdit a peine estes si grant creu que vous en soies a pourchaser dun autre*. Our translator apparently had an original differing from R.

dyte de Droyte Voy to daunce, for he said he couthe noo thyng doo; bot when he was in daunce,¹ he daunced so that noo man daunced like hym. And also vnneth they couthe make hym to syng. Bot at the kynges doghtre prayeꝛ, he
 5 song a songe whiche was passyng swete.

And afre when they had songen, the kynges sonne and his sustre beganne to harpe. And when they had harped a whyle, they prayd Surdyte to harpe. Bot they had grete payne to make hym to doo any thyng as towchyng to harpyng, syng-
 10 yng, or daunsyng; bot at the last he harped a newe lay that was mervellous. "Goode faithe!" said Gener, "I haue grete ioy that ye can this, for we haue had grete desiꝛ to knowe itt—for it is the lay that the goode knyght Ponthus made for his love, as it is told vs." "Madame, I wote not who made itt,"
 15 said he. Bot yitt he was a litle aschamed, and waxed rede, when he thoght on hiꝛ that he made itt for. Then Gener and hiꝛ sustre lerned itt, and had itt wretyn.

And anon went the kynges sonne and his twoo sisters to the kyng theyꝛ fadre and to the quene, and told theym that
 20 Surdyte couth the lay that Ponthus made in Litle Bretan. And the² kyng commaunded hym to harpe itt be-for hym and the quene; and they thoght itt mervellously goode, and said to theiꝛ twoo doghters, "Truly, faiꝛ doghters, we wold that ye lernyd itt, for itt is ryght goode, and the knyght doos
 25 itt wondrely wele—and of all dyssportes and plays he canne enowe."

And on a tyme Gener demaunded hym and sayd, "Surdyte se ye any lady in this londe, wheꝛ ye lyst putt youꝛ hertt and plesaunce vnto? I pray you, tell ye me; and in goode faithe,
 30 I am she that wolle youꝛ worshipp." "Ma dame," said he, "God thonke you at all tymes, for I haue grete nede of youꝛ goode helpe; bot in this case, I loue all as goode ladys." "Ay," said she, "Be they all comon to you, or be theꝛ any that has avauntege before any othre?" "Ma dame," said he,

¹ R, *fu a la dance*.

² MS. *ther*'.

“all be so good that noon may honour and worshipp them
 so myche as they be worthie; and as toveching me, the honu^r¹
 of so pouere a knyght is litle worthe.” “Ay,” said she, “he
 [*Fol.183^b.] is not pouere that has the beautie, the bountie, the * goode
 5 maneres, and the fey^r countenaunce, that ye haue; for in
 goode feith, I knowe not so grete a lady in this lande bot that
 she myght hold hi^r worshipp, if that she were love vnto suche
 a knyght as I trowe that ye be.” “Ma dame,” said he, “I be
 farre frome suche worthynes as ye say that I be of.” “Ay,”
 10 said she, “I say noo thyng bot that me thynkis² sothe.” “Yea
 Ma dame,” said he, “Itt likes you forto dysporte with me, that
 be so pouere a knyght.” And thus he held hym all vpon iapes,
 and made noo semeland to be in any throwes of love³—wherof
 itt dyspleased hi^r gretly; for and she had founde any cause or
 15 draght of love in hym, she wold haue dyscouered her more
 largely. And that perceyved Surdyte ryght wele ofte tymes,
 by hi^r and by mony othre ladys and gentylwommen, which
 cast to hym mony coverte wordes and contaunce—which
 with goode wyll wold haue loued hym, and he hade wold.
 20 Bot he shewed to eueryche elyke goode chere withoute any
 contaunce of love; wherfor the[re]⁴ were many sorofull,
 and in especiall the kynges twoo doghters.

Ryght wysely he aquanted hym with, and did plesaunce to,
 euery body. Mony nyghtes he thoght on his lady and made
 25 dyuers lays, wherof the wordes of oon lay ended in contenyng
 of sorowe⁵—that he wold loue hi^r withoute any eschaunge;⁶
 and in thes thinges at sume tyme he toke myche of his com-
 forthe, and lyghtnes of his straunge thoghtes.⁷

¹ R, *lamour*. W, *loue*. The translator probably read *lamour* as *lonour* in his French original.

² MS, *thynk is*.

³ R, *effray damer*. W, *wyll for to loue*.

⁴ R, *dont il y en eust*.

⁵ R, *Et faisoit lays et virelays et tous les noms cheoient en regart de douleur* (sic). W, *the whiche fell in complaymyng of sorowe*.

⁶ R, *sans changer*.

⁷ R, *prenoit moult de confort a la guet de ses estroites pensees*. W, blunders in this passage: & in these thoughtes he toke ofte tymes grete dyscomforte (sic) & sometyme allegyaunce of his heuy thoghtes.

Then itt befell that there was grete rumour of werre between the kyng of Englund and the kyng of Irlond; for there was taken truse, which was broken vpon a Myghelmes, the¹ [whiche] was twoo days passed. And the kyng of Ireland
 5 had at that tyme ryden with a grete armye. And anoon theŕ come tydynges to the courte therof. And the kyng sent oute privey seales, and lettres of commaundement, thorow oute his reauume; and ordaned to send furth his twoo sonnes.

Surdyte asked his maistre, "Ser, what title has the kyng
 10 to werre?" And Ser Henry toke hym that he had goode title, and toke itt vpon perell of his saule. Then said Surdyte, "Ser, I wolle goo with you; for in no evyll tittle of Cristen werres I wold not goo, for noo thyng. For we oughte mo² to loue ouŕ saules then ouŕ bodyes that be mortall, and
 15 from day to day drawen to an ende—and the saule may not dye, and it behoves to haue it³ rewarde of Almyghty Gode, authiŕ goode or evyll." His maistre herkened hym wele, and prased hym myche in his hertt, notwithstanding he wenyd that his fadre hade goode ryght.

20 The armye made,⁴ they beganne to goo aganes the kyng of Ireland, which had taken a castell and held itt—the which he had wonne with a sawte. And when the kyng of Irland herd by his spyes that the kynges twoo sonnes come to the batell, anon he come against theym; for he was an hardy
 25 man and a worthie. And he had six batells and had mony comons with hym.

¹ R, *La quelle estoit passee de trois iours.* W, *and was passed a thre days.*

² MS. *me.* R, *mieuix.* W, *better.*

³ Reading *his* for *it*, or dropping *it* from the text would amend the passage. *It*, in any form, as a genitive is of course impossible at this date. R, *son guerredon.* W, *her rewarde.*

⁴ R, *Mais touteffois cuidoit il que son pere eust droit en larmee. Ce fait ils partient et allerent contre le roy dislande.* Apparently the translator has rendered *ce fait*, the armye made (*i. e.*, put in order) deceived by the proximity of *larmee* in his original. The blunder is a surprising one, but it appears better to tally with the texts than the obvious but unsatisfactory emendation *beginne* for *beganne*. W, *The armes were assembled & wente.*

And the kyng of Englonde twoo sonnes had bot fouȝ batells with theym : wherof the Erle of Northampton, that was marshall, hade the furste batell ; the secund batell had the Lorde Henry ; and the third had the kyng¹ eldyst sonne, 5 in the which weȝ mony Barounes ; the fourte batell had the kyng of Cornewale, which was a full good knyght and newewe vnto the kyng, and with hym weȝ the Walshmen.

The kyng of Irland had the moste parte of his men on fote. Bot the Englyschmen weȝ the most parte on hors bak. At 10 the sembly weȝ grete showtes and cries, and mony knyghtes beten doune so that they had no power to relief theym self. So had the Erle soffred twoo batelles to come vpon hym. And [*Fol.184.] when Surdyte, that was in the * secunde batell, sawe theȝ men withdrawe theym, he said to his maistre, "Ser, itt is 15 tyme that we meve vs. Youre men losys grounde." "Ye say sothe," said the Lorde Henry.

Then they went furthe and entred into the batell and felled doune mony knyghtes in theyr entryng. And afre they toke theym to theyȝ swordes ; and then began the feghtyng strong 20 and fersly. And anoon the Ireschmen drewe bak, so that the othȝ batell come in, in the whiche was the kyng of Irland and the best knyghtes that he had. Theȝ was grete noys of trumpys. Itt was not long afteȝ bot all the batells assemelyd with mony grete iustys, bot itt weȝ to long to tell all, how 25 they weȝ doon.

Surdyte, that had grete desiȝ to doo fetes of armes, bett doune mony *with* the tronchon of his speȝ ; and afre toke hym vnto his sworde and began fersly, and smote on aythre syde hym//and made rowme before hym, so that he was knawn 30 of theym that neuer saw hym befor. He did so manfully that mony left theȝ feghtyng to behold hym.

Then said the kyng of Irlond, that if yonde knyght shuld live long, he wold gaȝ his men lose grounde. And so he smote the hors *with* his spurrys ; and *with* a gret short speȝ

¹ The *g* has a large tag much like the usual flourish, unlike the *-es* contraction.

he smote Surdyte at a travers, that he had nyghe ouerthrawn hym. Notwithstandyng, he fell not. And when he was redressed vp agayn, he said in his hertt that he was bot litle worthe, bot if he weŕ revenged. He knewe wele that it was
 5 the kyng of Irland for othre mervelles of armes that he sawe hym doo, and he sawe (hym) rychely arrayd in pereles and precious stones.

Then Surdyte avaunced hym and smote hym vpon his helme so grete a stroke that he was astoned and bowed bak
 10 vpon the arson of his sadle; and then he wold smyte hym noo more, for fere lesse he shuld sley hym; and thoght in his hertt that itt was not Godes wyll, that he shuld sley so goode a knyght. Then he toke hym by the shulders and drewe hym to hym, furth of his sadle, and cast hym before hym
 15 and bare hym as the wolfe beres his pray. The Iresche men trowed to have rescoued hym; but Surdyte smote so sore aboute hym that they durst not tovche hym and he bare oute of the batell, and putt, hym in save garde.

When the Ireschmen sawe that theyŕ kyng was taken, they
 20 loste theyŕ corage and hardenes; and toke theym to flyght, thos that myght—sume to the woddes and sume to the hylles. And mony weŕ beten doune deid. And at nyght euery man toke that they myght, and drewe theym to theyŕ banneŕ and to theyŕ stondard, and lugged theym in the felde in signe of
 25 victorye. Bot the Lorde Henry had gret ioy of his knyght, that had taken the kyng. Myche was the speche of Surdyte, that all the felde was wonne by hym. And on the morowe they went before the castell that the kyng of Ireland had taken; and within a whyle it was yelden vp, and mony othre
 30 townes and castells that they had taken.

Grete was the ioy (of the tydyngeſ) that come to the courte¹—howe by Surdyte the kyng of Irlond was taken and all his men dyscomfetyd; and at theyŕ comyng home the kyng and the quene went aganes hym with grete ioy, and said, “This

¹ MS. *courte and. R, Moult fu grant la Ioye et la feste des nouvelles . . . , comme le Sourdit auoit este vainquer.*

knyght is welcome, whiche is the floure of knyghthod." Surdyte was ashamed of the grete worshipp that they did hym; and said to the kyng and to the quene, that they did hym shame to putt hym to so grete worshipp, that had not deserued
 5 itt. "Ay," said the kyng, "I trowed that I had doon wele, bot syth it displeases you, I wolde doo noo more so."

Menne asked the kyng what he wold doo with the kyng of Irlonde, and he answeyrd and said, "Like as Surdyte wolde; [**Fol. 184^b.*] and that he * be not sett in prisoun, bot if he commaunde

10 itt." And Surdyte answerd therto and said, "As the kyng wolde, so be itt doon; and if itt like hym, by myn advice, it were wele doon to doo hym worshipp, and that he myght ete and drynk in the hall." And the kyng said the counsell was goode, and commaunded his yonger sonne to bryng hym into the hall.

15 And the kyng of Irland was full semely and a full fair knyght, of thirtee yeres of age, and was richely arrayd in a coote of purple and a mantyll of sabyllyn doune to the foote. He was gretely beheld of all the people. The kyng and the quene made hym cheŕ for the loue of Surdyte; and he was
 20 sett between the kynges twoo doghters. Bot he made bot symple chere. And Surdyte come to hym, and said, "Ser, be ye of goode cheŕ, for ye haue goode and easy prisoun between twoo fair ladyes." "Truly," said the kyng, "sithe Gode hath sent me suche prison, me oght not gretly to be dysmated."

25 Aftre dynner Surdite made hym to talke with the kynges yonger doghtre, and said to hiŕ, "Madame, howe likes you the kyng of Irlond? If I knewe that it liked you, I wold speke of a mariage between you and hym, althogh it long¹ not to me—for pouere men has bot litle voice among grete men
 30 and lordes." "Ay," seid she, "Surdite haue ye said as ye thoght?" "Yea Madame," said he, "if I wyst that it weŕ to your pleasure." "For sothe," said she, "itt pleases me, if it please my fadre and my brethre,² sith that I may not haue

¹A large *g* tag may represent an *-es*, but is probably merely a flourish.

²The first *e* looks like an *o*, in which the pen has slipped downward in making the left stroke, but there is no doubt that the reading is *brethre*, not *brothre*.

an othre, that be navthre kyng ne duke—bot he is the fairest knyght of the world, and the best.” “Madame,” said he, “it is a straunge thyng to knowe the beste, for theŕ be mony goode.” And he thoght that she said it by hym. And so
 5 she did. Bot he wold not comforth hiŕ therin. And afre they went furth for to dysporte theym in the gardyns, and playd att the chesse and att the tables, and at mony othre dysportes.

On the morowe the kyng of Englonde held a grete fest
 10 and a counsell,—and theŕ was the kyng of Scottes, that had weddyd his sustre, and the kyng of Cornewale, and princes, dukes and barounes,—to wytt what shuld be doon with the kyng of Irlonde. And thus they spake of dyuers ways. And at the last the kyng asked Surdyte and badd hym say
 15 his advyce,—“for itt is reason that we take ouŕ advice att you that has hym vndre subieccion.” He excused hym to sey, bot the kyng commaunded hym to sey, “Ser, sith me must nedes speke, foryeve me my rude and my simple speche. It semes me that the quarell and the debate that I haue herde
 20 is not myche worthe, for itt is not the lawe ne the commaundement of Gode to be all wey in aduersite—for he sais, ‘Loue thy neghbouŕ as thy selfe;’ and also, when Gode was borne, the aungell come to the shepherdes, and shewed to theym the message of Gode, and afre went vp into hevyn synghyng,
 25 Gloria in excelsis Deo et in terra pax hominibus, &c., that is to say, ‘Glorye and worshipp be vnto Gode in high places, and in erthe, peace to all people.’¹ Also God said to his apostylls dyvers tymes, ‘Peace be among you.’ So if God haue sent you grete realmes, kyngdomes, and lordeshippes, itt
 30 is not for to werre, the strongg ayeinst the feble; for ye werre also ayeinst the pouere people, whiche ye oughte to kepe in reste and peace, and they ben sleyn and destroyed. That is

¹ W and R have nothing corresponding to *in high places*; they substitute for all people. W, *men of good wyll*. R, *hommes de bonne volente*. The verse from the Vulgate is completed in W by the addition of *bone voluntatis*; in R it stops at *Deo*.

grete pitee for the Cristen to here of. And I shall say you what wolke make goode peace betwen you, by myn advice,—ye shall yeve to hym your doghtre in mariage, and all this [*Fol. 185.] debate to be cessed.” All lordes said, “Blessyd be * he for
5 his counsell.” Soo itt was hold and keped.

Then seid the kyng of Scottes, “Faiȝ frende, sith that your faiȝ speche be so plesaunt to all people, goo ye now to the kyng your prisonner and bryng to vs the reporte of his wyll; for we charge you with that occupacion.” And Surdyte said
10 he wold with a goode wyll, sith that itt liked theym. And anon he went and spake with the kyng of Irlond, and told hym the subieccion that he was in, and the perell that myght fall to his reame; and afre told hym howe that God loues hym that loues his neghtboures, and how mony has ben lost
15 by theyȝ corage and excesse of covetyse. “Nowe what say ye, and I laboure so that ye may haue¹ the kynges yongre doghtre and that your raunson and debate be foryeven in the mariage; and so euer afre to be frendes.” “Ser,” said the kyng, “and ye may bryng itt aboute, I am myche beholden
20 to you, afre God, most of any man.” “Wolle ye,”² said Surdyte, “that I doo itt and bryng itt to a conclusion?” “Yea,” said the kyng, “with all myn hertt, for I desire it most of any thyng.”

Then departed Surdyte from hym, and come to the counsell, and reported to theym that the kyng was ryght glad of
25 the aliaunce, and forto haue peace.

Thus was itt concluded and fulfilled. And the kyng and she ensured³ befor the Archebyschop of Canterbury; and within a moneth afre they weȝ wedded with grete fest and
30 ioy, for the kyng of Irlond had theȝ a hundreth knyghtes of a suyte, and gave to Surdite iiij stedes couresoures, and x thowsand besantes of gold, and grete plente of clothes of golde,

¹ The MS. repeats *may haue*.

² MS. *yeu*.

³ W, *The kyng . . . made y^e archebysshop . . . for to handfest theym*. R, *fist . . . fiancer*.

of purpyll, and of sylke, and also grete peyns¹ of armyn and of sables. And within a while the kyng sent [the] quene into Irlonde, wher as she was coroned, loued and worshipped.

[**Cap. XXIV.** How Corbatan the third sonne of the Sawdeyn loded in Englund, and how Ponthus slewe hym and toke his tresour. And the kynges two sonnes were sleyn in the batell. How the kyng offered to Ponthus to wed Genere his doghtre and to be kyng aftre hym.]

10 **S**O itt happened in the vij^{te} yer aftre that Surdyte come into Englund, that the thirde son of the sawdeyn, which was called Corbatan, had pylled mony iles and reaumes, and doon grete harme vnto the Cristen people, and made mony londes tributary to hym, and loded in Englund as his twoo brethre had—that oon in Spayne, and that othre in Pety
15 Bretan. Anon ther was a grete noys that he was loded with ix C vesselles, grete [and small],² and defyed the kyng and bad hym voyde the londe, or to forsake theyr beleve and pay tribute.

All the contre for grete fere tremelyd,³ when they harde of
20 the grete noumbre that the hethyn wer of. The kyng had counsell forto send hastely aboute, and so he sent hastely for the kyng of Scottes his brothre, and for the kyng of Irlond his son, and for the kyng of Cornewale his newew, and for the Erle of Wales, and for all othre erles and barounes of his
25 reaume. And when they wer assemyld, ther was a grete armye. Also he sent his twoo sonnes and Surdyte; and they come in ordynaunce bot iiij⁴ Englysch myles fro the Saresyns, and ordaned theyr batelles: wherof the kyng of Scottes and the kyng of Irlonde hade the furst; the secunde hade the

¹ R, *de bonnes pennes* (on an erasure) *de gris dermines et de sebelines*. W, *goode furies of veer and of sables*. See *pane*, a garment, in Stratmann-Bradley.

² R, *que grans que petis*. W, *what grete what small*.

³ MS. *tremelyd mony*.

⁴ R, *a trois lieues*. O adds *anglesses*. W, *well a foure myle*.

kyng of Cornewale; the thirde, the Erle of Wales; the iiijth
 the Lorde Iohn, the kyng eldyst son; the vth the Lorde Ser
 Henry, the kynges yongre son; and Surdyte had the vjth.
 Ther¹ vj batelles wer, grete, and noumbred to moo than xxxth
 5 thowsand horsmen, beside theym that wer on fote, as archers
 and alblasters.² And Corbatan the kyng, which knewe of
 theyr commyng made xij batelles and had moo then fourtee³
 [*Fol. 185^b.]thowsand, besyde theym * on fote, and they were ryght fers,
 as they that had not ben dyscomfeted in xii yere, sith they
 10 departed from the sawdeyn of Babilone.

And our people rode wele enbatelled and on a rowe; and
 when they sawe the Saresyns oste,⁴ that held so grete a coun-
 tre,⁴ they gretly amervelled. They had all herde messe,⁵ that
 the Bishop of Canterbury had songen,⁵ and wer shreven and
 15 howselyd, and then they held theym myche more sure. Sur-
 dyte come by the batelles, and said, "Feir Lordes, mervelles
 not of the grete noumbre, for we be vndreneth the banner of
 our Lorde Ihesu Criste, which fulfylled v^m people with v
 barley lovys and twoo fysches; for so he may (gyue) victorye
 20 to oon aganes C. Therof haue we goode herтт, and smyte
 we sharply aganes theym; for he that wolle,⁶—nedes the
 defendaunt comonly voydes and makes way. So goo we in
 Goddes name vppon theym withoute any delay, for they haue
 no Gode to defende theym, ne helpe them; and lete vs be
 25 hardy withouten any fere, and they shall be anon dyscom-
 feted, with the grace of God."

¹A tempting emendation is *thes* for *ther'*, but *ther'* . . . *wer* translates R, *si furent*.

²W, *arbalasties*. R, *arbalastriers*.

³R, *quinze*. O, *l. mille*. W, *xl*.

⁴W, the same, translating R, *qui tint si grant pais*. "Who occupied so much space?"

⁵The clause is neither in W or R.

⁶I. e., *smyte sharply*. I render, "Who sharply attacks—of necessity the defensive party yields," following R, *Car qui bien assault et se deffent len lui vuide lentree et se fait ou voye*. W, condenses, *for he that well assaylleth or defendeth vpon theym that haue no fayth God helpeth hym*.

Then they smote theiŕ horses *with* theiŕ spurrys and come to gedre oon aganes an othre. There was grete cry and noys of trumpes, and anon weŕ ryght mony ouerthrawen and dede. And the batell endured iiij houres¹ and more. Theŕ myght
 5 men here and see swordes breke and clatre on the helmetes of stele.

Surdyte made way wheŕ so euer he went, for as mony as he ouerraghte weŕ deid or distroyd. Fireague, oon of the Saresyns, had slayne Ser John, the kynges eldest son, of
 10 whiche was grete harme. The batell was ryght cruell.

Corbatan the kyng did ryght mervellously dedes of armes and sawe Ser Henry rychely arrayd, and how that he did mony faiŕ dedes of armes. He toke in his honde a grete shorte sworde² and stroke hym at a travers, in suche wyse
 15 that he perched his goode harnes, and stroke hym into the body alfe a fote. Surdyte then dressed hym and made the Saresyns to flee befor hym with the grete strokes that he gave theym, and beheld his maistre fall to the grounde, and hurte in the body. It nedes not to aske whethre that he was ryght
 20 sory or not. And then he stroke on the ryght hond and on the lefte honde, so far furth that he, *with* the helpe of the kyng of Irland, made a grete voyde place; and anoon he lyght doune and helped his maystre vpp, and asked hym howe he dyd. And he said, "Wele"—so that he weŕ revenged
 25 vppon hym that had gyven hym that. "And what is he?" said Surdyte. "It was Corbatan the kyng of the oste." "Ser, doute ye not," said Surdyte. "I wolle dye, bot if I son revenge you." Then was the kynges son sett vpon hors bak and putt furth of (the) prese.

30 And then Surdyte associate hym with C men or moo, and behelde the gonfanoune of the kyng Corbatan and went that way, and stroke on euery side thwarton and endway, and brake the prese and sawe the kyng, which did mervellously with his hondes and was rychely armyd and had a ryche

¹ R, *dura la b. tant qui heure de tierce*. W omits.

² W, *a spere grete & sparte (?)*. R, *une espee grosse et court*.

crowne of golde vpon his hede. Surdyte said vnto hym, "Ay, false Saresyn, thou shall goo no ferther, which has hurtt my maistre." Then he come vnto hym and smote hym with all his myght, that he astounded hym and made hym to fall vpon
 5 the arson of his sadle; and then Surdyte smote hym agane vndre the lasys of his helmete so strongly that he smote of his helmete and his hede with all.

And then he toke the hede and baꝛ itt to his maistre oute of the prese. And as sone as he sawe itt, he said, "Blessed
 10 be God, and I dye, I shal dye more ioyfully; and graunte [**Fol. 186.*] marcy,"¹ said he, "to Surdyte." "Ser," * sayd he, "thinke not to dye, for ye shall see within a while thes Saresyns dyscomfeted, seyng that theyꝛ kyng is deid."

And he said sothe; for as sone as they wyst that theyꝛ
 15 kyng was deyed noon of theym stode at defence, bot were sory and abasched, and began to dyscomforth theym self. And Surdyte entred into the presse and began to doo fayꝛ fetes of armes, and to reioyse his felleschipp, and to thrawe doune Saresyns; and faght so mervellously that all men knewe hym
 20 by the grete strokes that he gave. So they fled all afor hym, as doos the hayres afor the grehoundes,² and toke theym all to gedre as they that were oute of array, and fled by the contre as bestes.

And then ye myght see Englisch, Scottysch, and Iresch, men
 25 showte and crye strongly vpon theym, and sloo theym vpon euery side, so that the feld lay full of deyed bodys. The Saresyns wyst not whethiꝛ to flee, ne wheꝛ to hyde theym. Ther weꝛ mony that fled to theyꝛ shippes; bot Surdyte and the Englisch pursued theym son, that they myght flee noo
 30 ferther; and then they wer cast into the see. There was grete slaghtre.

And Surdyte come to a shipp and entred into itt, and spake Latyn, and asked where the shipp was that the kyng was in and his tresour. Then a Saresyn shewed hym the shipp and

¹ R, *grant merci*. W, *grammercy*.

² R, *comme le lieure fait deuant les chiens*. W, *as shepe before the wolfe*.

went oute with hym into itt, which was grete, faiȝ, and large,
 and wele stuffed, that it was *mervell* to see. And theȝ weȝ
 sume in the shipp that wold a¹ defended theȝm; and Surdyte
 leid hond on his sworde and sloo all theȝm that was therin,
 5 save thre Saresyns that come in with hym—the whiche said
 they wold be cristened, by cause that Mahounde soffred so
 mony to dye. And they wer cristened; and Surdyte yeave
 theȝm myche goode. Then said oon of the Saresyns, “Ser,
 see ye on of yonde coffyrs and trunkes, that be full of gold
 10 and syluer—the which the kyng Corbatan had wonne of
 mony of the Cristen people in mony realmes, iles, and con-
 trees—so myche that itt is *mervell* to see?” And the Cristen
 lordes toke vesselles and shippes, for theȝ weȝ the noumbre
 of ix C sales. They had mony grete wyynyngges, wherof they
 15 weȝ all ryche.

And Surdyte delyuerd his shipp to suche as he trusted best,
 and badd theȝm bryng itt to London; for he thought theȝ to
 yeve to sawdeoures, to men of armes, and archers, for to goo
 into his contrey of Spayne, that the Saresyns keped in *seruage*.
 20 Notwithstondyng, he gave so grete gyftes that euery man *mer-*
velled for the grete largenes.

The nyght passed—it was on a tuysday—and on the wedyns-
 day the[i] serched the feld to fynde the Crysten that were
 slayn. And theȝ they fonde the kynges twoo sonnes, the Erle
 25 of Wales,² the Erle of Gloucestre, twoo barounes,³ and aboute
 xl⁴ knyghtes, and ij^m comons. Sum weȝ led into theyȝ con-
 trey and the remenaunt weȝ buried in a white⁵ abbey.

The kyng, the quene, and all the contrey had grete ioy of
 the victorie that they had. And they said all that the good
 30 knyght Surdyte was the chief cause of all; for had not God
 and he ben, they had loste the feld. So he had the lavde and
 the prise.

¹ Undoubtedly a colloquialism for *wold have*.

² W adds, *the baron of staunford*. R, *staffort*.

³ R, *trois autres barons*. R, *thre other barons*.

⁴ R, *bien cinquante*. W, .xii.

⁵ W omits. R, *en une abbaye blanche*.

Bot sorowe and wepyng was theȝ myche for the kynges
twoo sonnes that weȝ deyȝd. The kyng, the quene, the ladys
and lordes made grete chere and thonkyng to Surdyte, and
seyȝd, by hym they had ouercomen theȝ enemes. Surdyte
5 weped when he sawe the kyng wepe for his maistre; bot the
kyng toke hym to comforth and said, that in more mery ne
in bettre seruice myght he not dye, then in the seruice of God
and in defendyng of his contrey aganes the Saresyns.

Itt taryed not long bot that he assemelyȝd his counsell.
10 And theȝ was the kyng of Scottes, his brothre, the kyng of
Cornewale, his newewe, and all his lordes. And the kyng
[*Fol. 186^b.] said, “Fair * Seris, ye see the meruelles that be comen to this
londe, and howe I haue lost my two sonnes. I be olde, and
the quene is not yonge; so we must deuyse who may haue
15 this roialme aftre, and who sall gouerne itt in myn age.”
The kyng of Scottes stode vp, and said, “I haue wedded youȝ
sustre and ye haue wedded myn; so ye owe to holde me as
youȝ brothre. I wold counsell you to yeve youȝ dignite to
Surdyte; for then ye shall be dovbted and dred, and youȝ
20 roialme worshipped and wele gouernyd.” And then they
answerd all with oon voice, that the consell was goode; and
the kyng accorded therunto.

And the kyng of Scottes, desyryng to wytt the wyll of
Surdyte, said vnto hym, “Surdyte, ye ought to thonke God,
25 for ye be fair and welebeloued of all people; for the kyng
and his lordes has chosen you to haue his doghtre, and to be
kyng aftre hym—and in his live to gouerne his roialme.”
“Ser,” said Surdyte, “God thonke the kyng and all theym
that wolde me goode and suche worshipp. It is bot febly
30 counselled, for it longes not to a kynges doghtre, and suche
an heiryture, to haue suche oon as I am, and of so lowe lyn-
nage; and Gode forbede, that as by me shuld be lowed the
bloode riall.” “What is itt that ye say?” said the kyng.
“We be all comen of oon fadre and modre. And mor ouer,
35 theȝ be so myche goode and worshipp in you that ye be
worthie to haue a grette.” So they spake myche to gedre of

this mater. Bot the kyng of Scottes myght neuer fynde in hym any wyll that he wold assent, for he made so fair excusacions that it was meruell to he.

And when he sawe that he myght not bryng itt aboute,
 5 he retourned to the kyng and to the counsell, and said to theym the answer that he had, and how that he thonked the kyng and his counsell, and wysely and worshipfully excused hym. "Truly," said the kyng, "he is married, or has betravthed sume lady, for ye may he that is herтт is sett on
 10 sume womman." "Truly," said they all, "we trowe he be married or travthe-plyght."

The kynges doghtre was ryght sory that she myght not haue [hym]. "Truly," said she, "I see wele that his herтт is sett in sume othre place, or elles he is wedded." She com-
 15 plenyd myche in hi herтт and sorowed, for aboute all men lyvyng she loued hym the best.

Nowe leve we of Surdyte and of the courte, and retourne we to Sydone and to the kyng of Bretan.

[**Cap. XXV.** How Guenelete, that made hym maistre aboute
 20 the kyng of Bretayn, wold lete marye Sydone vnto the kyng of Burgone. And how Sydone toke terme vnto the Whissontyde at the seuen yeres ende. How Herland sent his sonne Oliver to serche all contrees for Ponthus, and he found hym in the courte of England.

25 **W**hen Ponthus had taken his leve of Sydone and taken his shipp to passe over the see, itt is noo question bot Sydone had grete sorowe day and nyght; bot she keped itt so secrete that noo man wist therof bot Ellyous, the whiche comforthed hi gretly. Sydone said in hi lamentacion: "Allas!
 30 for my sake is goon the best and the fayrest of the world."

So itt happened that Guenelete had all his desire and was all maistre aboute the kyng. He was so flateryng and so fair spoken that he putt Herland oute of his office, and made (the)

kyng his heuy lorde;¹ and he laboured so that he had the kyng and all the courte in gouernaunce.

Sydon was desyred of mony kynges and dukes. And among all othre, the kyng of Burgone hard say, and was reported to
 5 hym by the Erle of Mounte Belyard his cosyn, that Sydon was the fairest and the wysest that any man knewe. Then was the kyng of Burgon so amorous that he myght not endure, bot if he myght haue hiȝ loue. He desyred to knowe by whome the kyng was gouernyd and in whome he traysted moste; and
 10 men told hym it was a knyght called Guenelete. And anon he sent to hym grete gyftes, that he shuld labre to the kyng
 [*Fol. 187.] of Bretane for hym. And Guenelete was * covetous and spake to the kyng and said, “Ser, lete marye youȝ doghtre, while ye be in hele—and ye shall alie you with sume goode
 15 kyng, and then doo ye wysley. Loo heȝ the kyng of Burgone desires to haue hiȝ! He is a worthie, and a ryche, kyng. Itt weȝ folye to refuse hym.”

Guenelete said and did so myche, that the kyng spake to his doghtre, and sayd, “Faiȝ doghtre, I be olde and feble and
 20 I haue noo child bot you, and ye be desyred of mony kynges and grete lordes. And I haue herd say ‘He that reson refuses, reson wolle goo fro hym; and so he myschevys wyllfully;’— wherof God defende that in this case itt be so doon. Faiȝ doghtre, the kyng of Burgone desires you, whiche is nevyewe
 25 to the kyng of Fraunce, and he is a myghtey, ryche kyng. Me semes he oghte not to be refused; and as for me, if it please you, I accorde therto.” “My Lorde,” said she, “as yitt is noo nede forto be married.” “Truly,” said the kyng, “ye haue so ofte tymes chalanged,² and I wot not wherfor; bot I
 30 shall (neuer) love³ you, bot if ye agree you to hym.”

¹ R, *le* [Herlant] *fist mal du roy*. W, *heuylorde*. What is a *heuylorde*? Perhaps “a displeased, unresponsive, master.” This would tally roughly with R.

² R, *vous mavez tant calenge*. W, *ye haue so longe forborne*.

³ MS. *leve*. R, *ameray*. W, *I shall neuer loue you*. The context shows clearly that the reading of W is the original.

She was gretly abasshed of hiȝ fadre wordes, that weȝ so harde to here. Then said she, "My Lorde, ye wot wele that theȝ is noo thyng that ye *commaunde* me bot that I wolle doo itt. My swete Lorde, I wolle say to you in counsell that
 5 I haue a grevaunce and a dysease in me that I dare not tell you, bot itt wolle be Whyssonday or I be hole, and then I shall fullfyll *your commaundement*." "Wele," said the kyng, "itt suffices me and that *terme* I wolle yeve you."

And the same Wytson tyd was the ende of the vij yeres
 10 comen oute, that was promysed between Sydone and Ponthus.

The kyng held hym pleased, and told Guenelete the *terme* that she had taken. Guenelete said that itt was wele, and sent to the kyng of Burgone, and did so myche, that the day of the mariage was sett the tuysday aftre Whyssontyde.

15 Sydone was passyng sory and sent mony tymes to herkyn of Ponthus and myght here noo glad tithynges of hym, by cause that he had chaunged his name. She was in grete sorow day and nyght. And when the tyme approchied, she was gretly abasshed, and sent for Herland, and sayd, "My
 20 true frende, I mervell mych of my lorde my fadre, that he is so fonde of Guenelete—and in suche wyse that he has made hym doo mervellous dedes, as to putt you oute of your office; and also by his fals wyles he caused the best and the manliest knyght of Cristeantie to departe oute of the contrey,—that is
 25 Ponthus, whiche ye noryshed and taghte thre yeres, whiche ye loue so wele;—and mony vyolente¹ dedes he has caused my fadre to doo, as he that is so grete a flaterer, and as deceyveable as euer was man; and in like wyse he caused me to be gyven to the kyng of Burgone; agane my wyll—for itt
 30 is tolde me that he is evyll condiciouned, fatt, olde, scabbyd, and frentyke. Bot I may not refuse the *commaundement* of my fadre; and so I haue taken *terme* vnto the tuysday aftre

¹ MS. *vyolence*. R, *villains fais*. W, *shamefull thynges*. *Vyolence* myght be a corruption of R's reading, but probably the original was that of O, *vallans fais*, which myght well have confused the translator, and have led to the rendering in our text.

Whissontyde. And I wote wele, and Pontus knewe itt, he wold putt a remedy therin ; and in trouthe theȝ be noo man in this worlde that I wolde haue dysclosed my counsell to bot to you."

5 "Ma dame," said Herland, "God defend that he cause you to haue any husbond ayeinst youȝ wolle, or any that has so evyll taches and maners. I shall tell you Ma dame,—Oliver, my sonne, be oon of the kynghtes that Pontus most louys ; and he shall goo into Englonde, Scottlonde, and Irlonde, and
10 all aboute, and if he live, he shall make hym to come to you." "Ay," said she, "In goode faith, ye say wele." And anon Herland spake to his son of this mater, whiche went with full goode wyll.

[*Fol. 187^b.] And Sydne and Herland charged Oliver with the message
15 and gave hym money enughe for his dyspenses. And * he passed the see and come to Hampton. And he enquired and fonde wele, that vij yere afor that tyme theȝ come a knyght into Englonde—the fairest and the best named in worshipp, and he chaunged¹ his name and called hym Surdyte de Droyte
20 Voye. Then Ser Oliver thought that itt was Pontus by the signes that he harde, and said to hym self that he chaunged his name for sume cause.

And he and his yomen went furthe, and as they come by a wodde, they mett with thevys ; and by cause they knewe not
25 his language and sawe hym rychely arrayd, they ran vpon hym and toke frome hym all that he hade and hurted hym ; and he escaped and went fro theym into the wodde to save his live. And theȝ he soffred hungre and pouertie, dysease—and almost naked. So he wayled and sorowed, for he founde
30 noo comforth of his dysease ; bot his tarryng and lettyng greved hym more then dide all his losse and disease. Bot as sone as he myght, he passed the forest and went sekynghis bred for the loue of Gode fro dore to dore, vnto the tyme

¹ This lapse into the writer's point of view is only in D. R, *Et se nommoit. W, but he named hym.* But probably the scribe's eye caught *chaunged* from the passage below.

that he come vnto the kynges courte, that same [day], at the aftre noon, that the kyng of Scottes spake vnto Surdyte for the mariage of Geneŕ.

And then Surdyte was at the courte wheŕ as he beheld the
 5 dysportes of yong gentylmen that dyssported theym in dyuers
 maners. Ser Oliveŕ, the son of Herland, come into the courte
 almost naked and dysspoled, and as he loked aboute, he sawe
 Ponthus and knewe hym. Anoon then he come befor hym,
 knelyng doune, and said, "My Lord Ponthus, God yeve you
 10 good grace and long live and encrease you in the worshipp
 that ye be in." Ponthus, a litle abashed and alf asshamed,
 said to hym; "My frende to whome speke ye?" "Ser, said
 he, "I speke vnto you, for I knowe wele ye be the kynges
 son of Spayne, that has forgetyn the contree of Bretane. And
 15 if I be pouere and naked, I be the son of Herland—Oliveŕ,
 which ye sum tyme loved wele; and I be comen to seke you."

And when Ponthus hard that he knewe hym wele, he did
 from hym his mantell and cast itt vpon hym and toke hym
 in his armes and kyssed hym, wepyng, and myght speke no
 20 worde to hym. And then he led hym into the chaumbre and
 lenyd bothe vpon a beddes syde. And when he myght speke,
 he said, "Ay, swete trusty frende and brothre, how doo they
 in that contrey, and who dysspoyled you thus?" And he
 said that he had mett with thevys. Grete wepyng was between
 25 theym twoo. And Ponthus did array hym newe with the
 beste arayment that he had; and when he was fully arrayd,
 he semed a full faiŕ knyght to see. And then he told hym
 what p[er]jelle he was in, among thevys, and howe he escaped
 and begged his brede fro dore to dore; and told also that
 30 Guenelete had all the covrte in revoll, and that pe¹ kyng
 loued hym most of any man, and howe he had putt oute his
 fadre fro his office; and aftre told hym howe Sydone wold
 not assent to noo mariage, and of the grete dysease that she
 had soffred,—and att the farthrest, she myght not lenger
 35 abide vnmarried, bot to the tuysday aftre Whitsontyd, and

¹ Entered in a different hand above the line.

that then she shuld be maryed to the kyng of Burgon, the which be full evyll condiciouned,—“bot Guenelete causes itt, for he has taken myche gold of hym. Sydone sendes to you prayng you to sett a remedye therin, for all the loue that
 5 be betweyn you twoo.” And when Pontius herd the grete loue and travthe of his lady, the teres fell doune from his eyne; and said, and God wold vouchesaue, that he wold
 [*Fol. 188.] (sett) a remedy therin. So they spake enughe * to gedre of mony thynges.

- 10 [Cap. XXVI. How Pontius retorned to Litle Bretayn; and there he chaunged gounes with a pouere pylgreme, and went to the feste of the kyng of Burgone and of Sydone. How Sydone gaue drynk to hym, as to a pouere man, and she knewe hym by the ryng that he lete fall into
 15 the cupp. How Pontius come dysgyssed to the iustying wheṛ as of aventure he slewe the kyng of Burgone.]

The tithynges come thorow oute the courte that theṛ was comen a man fro Litle Bretan that knewe Pontius, which named hym self Surdyte. When the kyng and the
 20 courte herd this, they had mych mervell, and the kyng said to the quene and to the kyng of Scottes, “Me thoght euer that he was of hygheṛ degre then he said he was, for the noble dedes that he dyd and for the goodnes of hym.” “Ay,” said the quene, “I mervell not thogh he wolle not take ouṛ
 25 doghtre in maryege, for I haue herd say that he loues ouṛ cosyn Sydon of Bretan withouten any vyllanye.” “Truly,” said the kyng, “it may wele be, when he wolle not marye hym self in this contrey.”

When they went to soppeṛ, Pontius come into the hall
 30 and his knyght with hym, which was ryght wele arrayd with riche clothes of sylk furred with sables, and he was ryght fair to see. The kyng of Englonde and the kyng of Scottes went ayeinst hym. And then he said to Pontius, “Wherfor haue ye so long celed you frome vs, and said that ye weṛ a

pouere knyght sonne, and ye be a kynges son? Thus we be dysceyved and has not doon to you the worshipp that we ought to doo to you; bot ye be worthie to haue the blame, for in good faith, we haue not doon itt bot of ignorance."

5 And when Ponthus sawe the gentyllnes of the kyng, he said, "All thogh it be so, that I be a kynges son, it is bot litle worth; for a man dyssheryte ought full litle to prase¹ hym selfe." "Ay," said the kyng, "save you^r bettre advice, (he) that has the noblenes, wytt, beautie, and bountie—with the
10 goode maners and the worthenes that is in you, is more worth than a reaume; for ye be aquanted with goode frendes, that, by the grace of Godde, ye may conquer you^r awn agane, and mony othre." Ponthus was asshamed therewith and turned the taylor into an othre matier.

15 The kyng made hym to sytt between the quene and his doghtre, whethre he wold or not. Aftre supper they went to dyssporte theym in a garthyn. Ponthus come to the kyng and sent for the kyng of Scottes, for the kyng of Irland, for the kyng of Cornewale, and for mony othre lordes and
20 barounes; and they sett theym in an herber. And then Ponthus sayd, "My Lorde, and all my lordes, and frendes, I wold make a request of a thyng that I haue doon."² And said, howe the sowdeyn sonnes has wered vpon the Cristen, and by the grace of God two of theym we^r destroyed; and
25 howe the thirde revoled hym in his contrey of Spayne—and by engyne entred into the londe and scaled the citee of Colloigne; and tolde theym the myschief that the londe stode in;—and howe his fadre was slayne; and howe that a goode prest that taghte hym and xij childre, and³ hyd
30 theym in a cave moo then³ two days withouten mete or

¹ R, *se doit pou priser*.

² R, *une requeste de mon fait*, is mistranslated by D, correctly rendered by W,—*of a nedefull mater of myne*.

³ MS. *And moo had then in a cave theym*. R, *Et les cela deux iours*. W, *hydde*. The emendation will appear violent, but it all follows from the substitution of *hyd* for *had*. I interchange *theym* and *moo then*, the illogical *and* at the head of the clause is allowed to stand, for such constructions are not uncommon in the text.

drynke; and as the wolfe goos oute of the wodd for hungre, so the xiiij went oute of the cave and weſ taken as son as they went oute; and howe the knyght sauē theym. And also he told howe the shipp brake ayeinst a rokkete of the
 5 see; and how they arrived in Litle Bretan; and all the maner howe they weſ saved. And as he told his tale, the teres ran doune frome many of the lordes eyen, to heſ the perell and the sorowe that they had escaped.

And when that he had tolde theym all the matieſ, he said
 10 that he wold goo into the contrey of Spayne to conqueſ his awn ryght, by the grace of God,—“for I thonke hym I haue ben in the fellyschipp of theym that has dystroyed twoo of the sowdeyn sonnes; so theſ be noon of lyve bot the thirde, whiche holdes the roialme that shuld be myn. And I vndre-
 15 stond that the roialme is wele and wysly gouerned, * and that they haue slayne bot fewe people; for they be made tributorye and euery hede pays a besaunt of gold, and for the grete goode that they pay, they soffre euerych of theym to holde and to kepe the lawe that theym best likes.” “Ser,”
 20 said the kyng, “I offre me with all myn hertt to goo with you, althogh I be olde, with my people and my goode.” “Ser,” said Pontius, “God yeld it you.”

The kyng of Scottes and the othre kynges, erles, and barounes, offred theym to goo with hym. And Pontius
 25 thonked the kynges and the lordes of theiſ goode and grete worshipp that they offred hym, and said that he wold haue noon bot men of armes and souldiours, aboute the noumbre of xij^M,—“the whiche I wolle wage, for I thonke God I haue god enughe.” And he said sothe, for at the last batell
 30 he founde enughe in Corbatan shippes—so myche that itt was grete mervell to see, for he had grete payne to noumbre itt. And wold noo thyng take bot the best knyghtes and men of armes, aboute the noumbre aboue said. And ordaned ship-pyng and sowded theym, so that they held theym plesyd and
 35 they had ioie to goo with hym. Also he desired to haue the Erle of Gloucestre, the Erle of Richemound, the Erle

of Darby, to be captaynes of the Englyschmen—and they graunted with goode wyll—the Erle of Darsy,¹ the Erle of Dace,¹ for the Scottes, and he had an erle of euery contrey forto warne² the people of the contrey.

- 5 And then they toke leve of the kynges and of the lordes and went to shipp and pulled vp their sales and departed with grete ioy fro the porte of Hampton. And the kyng desired that he shuld come agane as sone as he myght. And he thonked hym of the grete worschip that he had doon hym.
- 10 The kyng of Scottes, the kyng of Irlond, and the kyng of Cornewale convehed theym to shipp and toke theyr leue, full sore wepyng. And the kyng of Irlond said vnto Ponthus, “Ay fair frende, now see I wele that ye loue me not, sith that ye haue doon me so myche goode that I ne all my reaume
- 15 may not deserve itt, and now wolle not let me goo with you to helpe you.” “Ser,” said Ponthus, “God thonke you. I refuse not your helpe, afre that I haue nede in my iourney, bot I wolle not haue you with me as now, ne noon of myn othre lordes, vnto the tyme that I knowe the mane of the
- 20 contrey—and for othre certan causes. Then they kyssed to gedre and toke leve aythre at othre.

Thus departed Ponthus and his armye fro the costes of Englund and saled day and nyght vnto the tyme that they come neghe to Vennys. And then he ordaned his grete navie

25 to abide in the highe see, and said that he wold that their were asspyed no moo bot xv³ shippes, and that they shuld make theym like marchaundes of salt, to come into the towne. So he ordaned full wele his dooyng, and toke certayn vesselles with hym, in the which wer iij C wele fightyng men; and made

30 them to londe be nyght in a grete wodd betwyn Amroy⁴ and Vennys; and charged theym that they shuld not be farre of, vnto the tyme that they had tithynges fro hym, and that

¹ R, *Le conte dars et le sire de Douglas*, nothing is said about the Scots. W mentions only—*Of the scottes the Erle of Douglas*.

² R, *gouverner*. W, *gouverne*.

³ R, *xl*. W, *a forty*.

⁴ R, *roye*. W, *Auroy*.

they shuld come when they weſ sent for. This was the mone-day in Whitsontyde, and the tuysday shuld be the weddyng of Sydone and of the kyng of Burgone.

Ponthus leped to hors and toke bot a yoman with hym.

5 The tuysday erly, as he rode, he founde a pylgreme that had his govne sved full of patches and a cappe full of broches. And anoon he lyght doune and said to the pylgreme, "Frende we wolles chaunge ouſ govnes and I wolles haue your cappe and ye shall haue myn." "Ay Ser," said the pylgreme, "ye
10 scorne me." "In goode faith, that doo I not," said Ponthus.

[*Fol. 189.] And * so they chaunged. And Ponthus did vpon hym the pylgreme govne, his hatt, and his hosen; and toke the Burdone that he baſ in his honde. And his yoman said vnto hym, "Ser, ye be oute of youſ wytt. Why chaunge ye youſ
15 riche array with this pouere clothyng?" "Hold thy peace," said Ponthus, "and holde thes twoo horses att the tounes ende, and remeve not vnto the tyme that I come to the."

And then he went furth his way wheſ as the kyng of Burgone was; and anoon afre he sawe his somers and his horses
20 come with his officers; and afre he sawe the kyng rydyng on a palfrey all blak. And the kyng and Guenelete rode talkyng to gedre. As they rode furth, Ponthus said to theym, "Loo heſ be twoo wele noryshed!—for bothe twoo has goode fatt belles, and wele fed. Ay Sainte Mary!" said he to Guenelete,
25 "youſ bellye has gotten mony fatt soppys of courte."¹ Guenelete waxed rede for shame and was full wroth and turnyd his hors and said, "Beggaſ, what says thou?" and was aboutward to smyte hym with a tronchon that he baſ in his honde. And Ponthus turned his burdone and said that
30 he shuld make his berd,² and he toched hym. Then the kyng of Burgone said to Guenelete, "Leve ye this trowane, for ye can haue no worshipp of hym." And so they passed furth toward the courte. And Ponthus, that lound theym not, playd the foell befor theym and mokked theym as they rode.

¹ W adds with R, *ye are full well shapen to be a veray grete flaterer of the courte.*

² R, *dist qui lui fera sa barbe.*

And euer Ponthus foloed theym to they come to the courte. And when he sawe men entre in at the gate, he foloed in afre theym. And the porteꝛ wold haue putt hym oute, bot Ponthus shote hym so fro hym that he made hym fall; and
 5 said to hym that he was oon of the xiiij pouere men that was chosen. "Goo! A myschaunce come to the!" said he, "Thou be a strong beggeꝛ."

At that tyme itt was the custome at the weddyng of grete astates, theꝛ shuld be xiiij pouere men ordanyd, the which
 10 shuld sitt at mett befor the bride at a table by theym selfe—in the worshipp of God and of his xij apostelles.¹ And afre the dynneꝛ, she that was maryed shuld yeve drynke to eueryche of the pouere men, in a copp of golde. And thus went Ponthus and satt doune for oon of the xiiij.

15 The fest was grete and of mony dyuers *seruices*, Ponthus ete bot litle and beheld ofte tymes his lady Sydone, which was bot of simple chere, and all be-wepte; for Guenelete told hiꝛ that Ponthus was deyed in Irlonde—and she trowed itt bot a litle. When the tables was taken vp, they led Sydone
 20 to hiꝛ *chaumbre* to chaunge hiꝛ arayment and hiꝛ attyre, forto goo to the scafoldes to see the iustes and the dyssportes. And in the comyng to hiꝛ *chaumbre* theꝛ was a gallerie, in the which weꝛ the xiiij pouere men. And ther was ordaned twoo gentyllwommen—that oon had a potte of syluer full of wyne,
 25 that othre hade a copp of golde—and wated vpon Sydone. And when she come, she gave drynke to euery pouere man—and Ponthus was the last. And as he dranke he lete fall the ryng with the diamaunte, that Sydone yeave hym at theiꝛ furst *aquantance*, into the copp; and when he had dronken,
 30 he sayd softly to Sydone, "Madame, I pray you to drynke this litle for the loue of Ponthus." And when she harde the name of Ponthus, itt reiosed hiꝛ gretly and she toke the copp and dranke; and in hiꝛ drynkyng she sawe the ryng a[nd]

¹ This custom of having poor men at the feast is dismissed with a word in W, nor is the reason for the custom given. The description in the text follows R literally.

knewe itt wele anon and was ravysshed for ioye, so that she
 wyst not wele what she dyd. And then she called hiȝr damesell
 Ellious and said to hiȝr in counsell, that she shuld lede the
 grete pouere man aftre hiȝr into hiȝr warderopp; and so she
 5 led hym with hiȝr. And thos othre pouere men demyd that
 she wold yeve hym sum maner of gyftes for the loue of God.

And when she was in hiȝr warderopp, and noo moo with
 [*Fol. 189^b.] hiȝr bot he and Ellyous—and he * was dysgyssed, that noo
 man myght knaw hym—with grete payne Sydne spake furst
 10 and said, “Swete frende, who betoke you thys ryng that I
 fonde in the cupp?” “Wote ye not,” said he, “to whome
 ye gave itt?” “Yis,” said she, “ryght wele. Bot is he deid
 or on live?—I pray you tell me truly.” Said he, “He is on
 live, Madame, trowed ye that he was deid?” “Yea, sothely,”
 15 said she, “for Guenelete and mony otheȝ told me so.” “And
 if ye see hym, what wold ye say?” said he. “I may say,”
 said she, “that I had neuer so mych ioy in my hertt, as I
 shuld haue then.” When he hard that, he said no more, bot
 rubbed a litle his vyssage that he had peynted; and anon
 20 she knewe hym, and said, “Ay, ye be Pontus! and ther is
 noo thyng in this world that I loue more, aftre God and my
 fadre.” Then they had gret ioy and cleped and kyssed to
 gedre.

And then he said to assey hir pacience, “Ma dame I be
 25 ryght wele pleased that ye be so wele and rychely maryed.”
 “Ay,” said she, “my swete frende, I pray you nomor therof,
 for he lives not that I wolle haue, bot you, if itt please you
 to haue me,—the whiche I sweȝ to you and has sworne ofte
 tymes, with mouthe and hertt,—for the laste promys avayles
 30 not, bot oonly the furste.” “Ay Madame,” said he, “thinke
 ye neuer to take so pouere man, beggyng his bred, and for to
 leve a ryche kyng. I shall neuer counsell you, to acqute my
 trouthe, to leve hym.” Then said she, “Truly my swete
 frende, I wolle neuer haue othre bot you, for I shall neuer be
 35 wele att ease,—bot a thowsant tymes mor at ease to soffre in
 youȝr companye the mysease and the povertie that ye soffre,

then to haue all the ryches of the world *with* the myghteyst kyng that is; for that pouertie that God has sent you is bot to assay you,—that may aftre yelde you rythes¹ and worshipp double folde if ye putt holle you^r trust to hym.

- 5 When Ponthus hard the grete trouthe and stedfastnes of hi^r, the teres fell doune from his eeyn, and aftre he smyled a litle, and said, “Madame, by my trouthe the^r was neuer fonde a bettere, a faire^r, ne a more stedfaste lady then ye be; and sith I see you^r grete traethe, I wolde hyde no thing
10 frome you no lenger. For I tell you for trouthe, that I haue more gold and syluer and precious stones viij² tymes told, than euer had my fadre; and also I haue xij³ men of armes, sowded and payd for alf a ye^r, forto goo and conque^r my contrey that was my fadres. And dysmay you not for I shall
15 tell you what ye shall doo; ye schall goo to the scafoldes to see the iustes and ye shall take with you Pollides my cosyn, and my fellowes, so that the[i] be aboute you; and itt shall not be long bot I shall see you. I may no lengre tarrye with you.” Then they kyssed³ and departed.
- 20 And he went furth haltyng and come to his yoman, that abode hym, and toke his hors and rode to the wodd whe^r he had lefte his people. And when they sawe hym, they knewe hym not; and they went to haue taken hym for a spy. Bot he began to laghe and said, “I am Ponthus;” and then they
25 knewe hym. And the Erle of Gloucestre said, “Ser, ye had almost doon you a vylleney. How be ye thus dysgised?” “Ser,” said he, “I haue doon itt for a cause that I wold not be knowne.” And then he sett theym in ordenaunce, aftre the noumbre of xl knyghtes, all of oon suyte,—of the worthiest
30 of his companye. And he told theym his entent. ⁴And then they come rydyng by x and by x thorow the stretes, so that it was grete ioy to see.⁴ And then the Bretanes had grete

¹An unfinished *h* is changed to *c*.

²W, *seuen*. R, *sept*.

³R, *Si lacole et encore ne losa baiser ne Requerre*. W, *And toke his leue and folde her in his armes & halsed her/and yet durste not kysse no desyre for to kysse her*.

⁴This sentence is found neither in W nor in R.

mervell, and the Burgones bothe, what men they weȝ, that weȝ so wele armed and so wele besene.

And by that tyme Sydne was comen to the scafold with
 [*Fol. 190.] mony fair ladys and gentyllwommen. * And Pollides toke
 5 the reyne of hiȝ bridle and convehed hiȝ to the scafoldes,¹—
 for the whiche Guenelete was inwardly wroth, that Sydon
 had commaunded hym to doo so. And Sydne told Pollides
 that he shuld se his cosyn Pontus. Then Pollides had full
 grete ioy in his hertt and told all his fellowes, and they had
 10 full grete ioy in theyȝ hertes of the tithynges.

Also it nedes not to aske whethre that Sydne was ryght
 ioyfull in hiȝ hert or not. And when sche saw Pontus so
 large, so wele armed, and so wele syttyng vpon his hors,—
 and iusted rowe by rowe, and threwe doune knyghtes and
 15 horses, and brake mony sperys, and did mervellously,—
 Sydne waxed rede a litle for ioye and said, “Se ye hym that
 is armyd in purpyll and asure, and has a white ladye in his
 creste holdyng² a lyon enchyned—and the lyon has *lettres* of
 golde, whiche says ‘God helpe’³—and has aboute xl fellowes
 20 of his suyte, savyng they haue no *lettres* of gold;—for he
 with the *lettres* of gold is Pontus, and the othre be his
 fellowes.” “Ay Ma dame,” said Pollides, “I knowe it wele
 by his rydyng and by his dedes of armes.” Then Pollides
 schewed hym to his fellowes, the which held theym nyght⁴
 25 Sydne, like as she had commaunded theym.

The kyng of Burgone come into the feld vpon a grete
 stede of Spayne, and he was wysly arrayd and wele armed,
 and he had aboute xxx⁵ knyghtes of his suyte. Euerych
 theyȝ speres raysed redye, and began to spuȝ and to iuste by
 30 rowe with the Bretanes that held the fest.

Then Pontus sawe the kyng of Burgonne and dressed
 hym toward hym and his fellyschipp. And then they ouer-

¹An erasure, some six letters long, follows *scafoldes* in the ms.

²ms. *holdyng*.

³W misrenders,—*God helpe the fourty felawes. R, dieu aide.*

⁴See the glossary for the similar forms *neighboures* and *hight*.

⁵W, *forty. R, xx. O, xxx.*

threw knyghtes and horses, so that euerych of theym were abasshed. The kyng of Bretan, which was on the scalfold with the ladys and olde knyghtes, asked whoo that thoos grete knyghtes weȝ, and what he was that had his lady in his
 5 sheld, which holdes a lyon enchyned with lettres of gold,—and has so many fellowes of oon suyte. And eueryche said, they knew hym not,—“bot he doos mervelles, for he ouer-reches noon bot that he throwes theym doune.” “See ye not,” sayd oon, “how he ouerthrowes knyghtes and horses,
 10 and what mervelles he doos?” “He is an aduersarye,” said the grete ladyes. “Sothely he is a goode knyght,” said the Lady of Doule, the which was both faiȝ and wyse. “I sawe neuer knyghth,” said she, “doo so wele on hors bak, ne mor like to Ponthus,—of whoes savle God haue mercy. Amen.”
 15 Then said the kyng to Sydone, “Faiȝ doghtre, I wold not the knyght met with youȝ housbond, lest he threwe hym doune, or distroyd hym; for his strokes be mervellous sore and grete.” “Ser,” said she, “and he be wyse, he wolke kepe hym from hym, for he be a full hardy knyght, and ryght
 20 manly.” They made grete language of Ponthus and of his knyghthod, bot all weȝ abasshed of hym, what he myght be.

He tarryed not long; bot of aventure he encountered the kyng of Burgon and smote his hors with the spurrys and smote the kyng myghtely in the sheld,—and the spere was
 25 grete and strong, and he handeled itt as he had strenght and hardenes enughe, and in esspeciall forto doo dedes of armes befor his lady, which of long tyme had not seen hiȝ;—so this stroke was so grete that he felled hym doune vppon the crowpeȝ of his¹ stede and made hym to lose the reynes of his
 30 brydle.² And the horse was yong and strong and baȝ hym

¹ After *his*, *saddle* stands in the MS. cancelled by the rubricator.

² From here to the end of the paragraph D follows R literally. W shows a curious confusion, which makes both Ponthus and the kyng attempt to leap the pit and, apparently, both fall in,—and that other was yong and strong and bare hym backward & fell into a grete pyll full of stones and Ponthus wende for to haue lepte ouer/but they fell in so sore the kyng vnderne the all that he was deed and his hors deed. W omits also the final clause of the paragraph.

furth and with grete myght leped into a pytt full of stones, wenyng¹ to haue leped ouer, and fell in so mervellously, and the kyng vndre hym, that the hors was deid, and vnnes the kyng myght haue confession.

5 Burgonnes weþ wrothe and sorofull for theyþ lorde, for euery body cryed—"The Duke² of Burgone is deid." Pon-
 [*Fol. 190^b.] thus hard itt, which roght bot * litle. And nomore dide
 Sydone. Ponthus and his fellowes light doune of theyþ
 horses, and went vp vnto the scafold and did vp his helme,
 10 so that euery man knewe hym. And then he come to Sydon
 and toke hiþ by the honde and said, "Ma dame, ye must be
 my prisonner, bot ye schall haue goode prisonement." She
 waxed rede for shame and had more ioye then any man
 couthe thinke, and said, "If I shuld be prisonneþ, itt behoves
 15 me to enduþ."

The kyng was comen doune of the scafold, full sory for the
 kynges dethe, bot when he wyst that itt was Ponthus that
 dide all the mervelles and that he had taken his doghtre, he
 had grete ioy, and said, "God has ordaned that he shall haue
 20 my doghtre, and we may not gyf hiþ to a bettre knyght.
 Truly in hym be so mych worschipp that he is able to haue
 the kynges doghtre of Fraunce. Bot truly I wenyd that he
 had ben deid, as sume men made me to vndrestond." Then
 he came toward Ponthus, his armys spredying, and said that he
 25 was right welcome. And Ponthus bowed doune to hym and
 said, "As Gode live, God yeve to you my souerene lorde, as
 ye haue of me, grete ioye." Then the barounes and the ladyes
 both made myche of hym. And his cosyn Pollides and his
 othre fellowes welcomed hym with grete ioye. And Guene-
 30 lete made grete ioye in his countenaunce, bot not in his hertt.
 The people of the contrey thonked God and said, "God has

¹After *wenyng* a superfluous *to haue* is cancelled by the rubricator.

²Elsewhere always *Kyng*, but R and H have consistently *le Duc*. W, *ye newe wedded kyng* is *deed*. R, *le bruit fu que le marie estoit mort*. The lapse shows pretty clearly that the original of D used *Duke* throughout, and that the change to *Kyng* in D and W is arbitrary.

sent vs a goode knyght that wolke kepe vs frome ou^r enemes." Grete was the ioye of that aventure.

Ponthus keped with hym all the lordes of Englonde, and so did Sydone, and made theym grete chere—and specially the
 5 Erle of Gloucestre, that was a full goode knyght. And asked hym how his cosyn the kyng fared. The Erle said, " Ryght wele, blessed be God ;" and told the kyng of the *mervelles* and of the adventures of the kyng of Englonde ;—and how by Ponthus he toke and ouercome the kyng of Irlond ;—and
 10 how he toke hym among his men and ba^r hym away, whethre he wold or noo ;—and how he raunsouned hym not bot made peace between theym ;—and howe that by Ponthus was sleyn the son of the sawdeyn, called Corbatan, and the^r was so myche tresour with hym that itt was mervell to here tell therof, for
 15 he had not cessed xij ye^r afore to pyll the iles of Cristendome that he myght ouercome. Also he told hym howe Ponthus named hym Surdyte de Droyte Voy, and said he was bot a pouere knyght son. When the kyng herd that he named hym soo, [he thoght it was]¹ by cause itt was putt vpon hym, that
 20 he lovyd in vylanye, and the surenome that he toke was by cause that he offred hym to fyght *with* ij or *with* iij in the quarell, and myght not be soffred. Also the Erle told hym howe the kyng of Englonde offred to hym Gene^r his eldest doghtre, and to be kyng (of) Englonde afre his discesse, and
 25 duryng his live to be honored of all the reaume ;—and how he disprased hym selfe and wold not thereof ;—and howe by a knyght that was evyll clethed he² was known—and that was Olive^r the son of Herland ;—and howe the kyng and all the courte was asshamed that they had doon hym no mor wor-
 30 shipp, sith that he was a kynges son.

Itt did the kyng of Bretan myche goode to here hym, and yitt more goode to his doghtre, and to the barounes that there were ; for it was a noble thyng to here of. And afre the Erle had said, the barounes come to the kyng, and said, " Se^r,

¹ R, *Si pensa que cestoit pour ce quil, etc.*

² R, *qui estoit tout nu.* W, *a naked knyght.*

what thinke ye to doo? Lete hastely speke to Pontius to take your doghtre, and so shall ye and your contrey be keped in peace; for we doute vs gretly that he wolde not take hir, because of the kynges doghter of Englonde, for itt is myche
 [*Fol. 191.]
 5 better mariage then this is; also he has so grete tresour that he settes not by noo dangerous lordes." Sayd the kyng, "I pray you all to thinke thereon for ther be noo thyng that I desire so myche—for ther fell neuer grettre goode to me, ne worshipp." Then the barounes spake to gedre; and the
 10 Vicounte of Leon was charged with the matier; and he went to Pontius and said full wysely, howe he had furst ben savyd in Bretan, and howe the kyng loued hym wele, and howe by lies and envye the kyng had ben wroth with hym, and howe that the kyng is olde and beleved a tale lyghtly—and that
 15 ther is noo body bot that he has sume tache,—and that the kyng with all the wyll of his londe offred hym his doghtre, and to be kyng aftre hym. Pontius, the which desyred noon othre thyng, said, God yelde itt the kyng and all his londe; and that he is the furst lorde that so myche goode and wor-
 20 shipp did hym; and that he myght neuer deserve itt vnto hym; thogh he wer of havyng and of pusaunce to haue the myghtiest lady of the worlde, he wold (not) take hir—to refuse Sydne; and that he is beholden to the kyng, to the barounes, and to the contrey, aboue all othre people. The
 25 barounes had grete ioye of the answer and told the kyng therof, and he was ryght glad.

Then he sent for the byschop and lete hondfest theym. And the monday aftre was the weddyng. And it nedes not to aske if Pontius and Sydne wer glad, and an hundreth
 30 tymes more then they made semblaunce. Grete ioye ther was thorowe oute all Bretane of this assemble.

Pontius, which was wyse, keped not to be blamed of noo man. He excused hym to Guy Burgonne, the kynges brothre of Burgonne, and to the Erle of Mounte Belliard, the which
 35 wer comen thedre, and said to theym that he was full sory of that aventure that befell, of the kynges dethe;—"for sothly

when I iusted with hym I knewe not what he was." And they beleved hym wele, and that itt was bot aventure of armes, and that he myght¹ not doo thertoo.¹ And he offred hym gretly to them; and on the morowe he lete ordeyn for
 5 hym a full fair service and gave iiij² penes sterlinges to euery pouere man that come thedre, and they had neuer afore seen so fair an almus. So he was gretly prased; and the kynges frendes thonked hym myche, and said that they wer myche be-holden to hym. The bodye was embawmed and³ chisted;
 10 and theſ was ordaned fair horses to carye hym to his con-tree; and Ponthus convehed the corps iij⁴ myles with grete torches and did hym as myche worshipp as he couthe, notwithstanding he was bot litle displeased with his deth. So with grete payne the lordes of Burgonne made hym to
 15 retourne, and toke leve eueryche of othre, and they prased gretly Ponthus and said, that was a verray knyght aboue all othre; of worthenes, larges, curtesie, and louyng God and the chirch, noo man myght passe hym as they[m] semed varrely; and said that God loved hym, when he ordaned hym, so wele
 20 manered,⁵ so wele gouerned, and vertuously disposed.

[**Cap. XXVII.** How Ponthus made a maundement of the barounes and knyghtes for to goo into Galice to conquer his contrey, that the Saresyns helde.]

25 **P**onthus retourned to Vennys and come to Sydone and iaped with hiſ and asked hiſ if she weſ oght displeased with hym, because that he had deliueryd hiſ of hir housbond. And she waxed rede and said, "*Ser*, itt is perilous to doo dedes of armes with you, but yitt I conne you thonke for that ye

¹ This idiom is also in W. It appears to mean "He couldn't have helped it." The rendering departs from R's, *et que nul ne sen deuoit en riens merueiller*.

² W. iii. d. R, *trois esterlins*.

³ W, and *layde in a chayre*. R, *et porte en ung chariot*.

⁴ R, *bien trois lieues*. W, *well a .vi. myle*.

⁵ MS. *manered* hym. Om. hym.

haue doone.” “Ma dame,” said Pontius, “the thynges that be doone may not be vndoone.”

Then he went to the kyng and to the barounes, and said,
 [*Fol. 191b.] “Seris, ye haue herd say that I haue an * armye to conquer,
 5 with helpe of God, my roialme, whiche the Saresyns holdes
 fro me. So I wolle haue, if itt please you, sume people of your
 contrey that wolle take wages, and I wolle pay theym with
 full goode wyll to All Halowe¹ day, before the honde.” “Ay,
 swete, fair son, ye shall not aske, bot take my people,” said
 10 the kyng, “at your own wyll to conquer your contrey, and
 take my tresour with you, all that I haue; and if itt please
 you, I wolle conne you myche thonke to lete me goo in your
 companye, for I be olde and itt shall be noo grete losse of me
 —ne in better seruice myght I not dye, for my saule is then
 15 in Godes seruice.” Pontius thonked hym then//and said,
 “Att this tyme ye shall not goo, bot kepe ye this contrey; and
 I wolle noon of your goodes, for God has sent me enugh for
 this iourney; bot I wolle haue of your people, for I trast most
 to theym afor all othre.” The barounes and the knyghtes
 20 had grete ioye of that iourney, and euery man desired to goo
 with hym.

And he bad that euery man shuld be redy within xx² days
 at Vennys; and he ordaned by all contres for shippes and
 vitell. And that day euery man arrayd hym wele and gar-
 25 nysshed theym of men in the best wise they couthe. Pontius
 said to the Barounes of Aniou and to othre neightboures, as
 to Geffray de Lazynyen and Andrewe de La Tour aboue all
 othre, for itt was told hym that they weī comen late oute of
 of the contrey wher they had bene twoo yere in were vpon the
 30 Saresyns,—“Ay,” said Pontius, “they be ryght goode knyghtes
 and noble men of armes, and he is wele at ease that has theym
 in his companye.”

Then the lettres come to theym and to mony othre of dyuers
 contrees aboute. The messyngers departed. And when they
 herd thes tithynges and the cause to goo vpon the Saresyns,

¹ R, *a la tous sains*. W, *for halfe a yere*.

² R, *xv iours*. W, *.xv*.

that held his roialme, they had grete ioy to goo and euery man ordaned hym to goo to that iourney.

[**Cap. XXVIII.** Of the grete presente that Ponthus made to Sydone on the day before the weddyng; and of his vowe
 5 that he wold not marye hir vnto he had conquered agane his reame of Galice.]

And afre, Ponthus sent for his grete shipp and lete bring furth therof parte of the riches the day before his weddyng. And then he sent a presente to Sydone of crounes,
 10 cronocles,¹ chappeletes, gyrdles of perles and precius stones, gybsers of purpyll with perle, furies of sables, armyns, and of gray, and of othre i[e]welles that itt was mervell to see the riches that thei weȝ, for they weȝ prased to more value then x² thovsant besantes of golde. The kyng said to his doghtre,
 15 "Ye be not maried to a prince disherite; bot God has sent you a goode, a faiȝ, and a ryght noble lorde. So ye ought gretly to thonke hym of his grace."// And afre, he gave to the kyng mony faiȝ iewelles, precius stones, cuppys of gold; and to eueryche of theym that weȝ barounes and lordes of
 20 Bretan, a gyfte of golde, afre theyȝ astate. And he was gretly prased for his grete larges.

The day of his weddyng the lordes of Englonde, Scotlonde, and of Irlond weȝ nobely arrayd, and of Bretan also, which did hym worshipp. The feste was grete, and there was grete
 25 ioye of herodes and of mynstrelles withoute noubre, and Ponthus gave theym grete gyftes. Ther was mony straunge metes and drynkes. Ponthus made a vowe which was mych spoken of, for he said thus, "Bycause the people of the courte shuld not say that the kyng had gyven his doghtre to a man
 30 withouten livelode,³ I make myn avowe to God, that I neuer

¹ Coronets. See the Oxford Dict. for *cronicle* and *coronacle*. W, *sercles*.

² R, *xx*. W, *thyrty*.

³ R, *terre*. W, *londe*. R adds,—*Je voue que iamais ne coucheray en son lit Iusques a ce que ie soye sires du royaume qui fu mon pere*. W translates literally adding, & crowned or elles I shall dye therfore. To this omission, D sacrifices the significance of the vow.

kyssed hiȝ requyryng vylleny, when I went oute of this contreye, ne I thoght neuer to doo othre wyse to hiȝ, then I myght to myn awn modre." And he said that, because of the wordes that the kyng said to hym when he departed oute of Bretayne. [*Fol. 192.]
 5 When Sydone herd thes// * wordes, she had grete ioye in hiȝ herтт and loued hym myche bettre. So that was myche spoken of, for sume sayd that he was a trewe knyght, and sume said that he wold not abyde so long vnmaryed, bot that he hoped to haue sume solace of hiȝ and she in like wyse of hym. Then
 10 said the kyng, "In goode faith, I be a verray coward to beleve so lyghtely a lesyng that I haue herd.

[**Cap. XXIX.** How Pontius departed from Bretayn to go conquer his contrey; and howe he found in a chappell the Erle of Destreue, that was his vncler, and Ser Patryk that afore tyme saved hym; and how by their counsell he wanne the grete batell and slewe the kyng Brodas and took the toun of Colloigne; and how the land of Galice was clensed of the Saresyns.]

20 **T**he feste was grete and the kyng wold not that they had noo iustys, for the aventure that the kyng of Burgonne was deid, lest any myschief myght happen, bot he made theym to daunce and to syng and mad mony newe disportes// Att nyght Pontius come into the chaumbre of Sydone and said to hiȝ// "Ay my swete frende, my loue and my ioye, my
 25 herтт and all the sustenaunce of my live, I haue ben hasty to the vowe that I haue made, bot in goode (faith),¹ I did itt for ouȝ worshipp, for the wordes that has ben said afor this tyme. ¶ "Bot in trouthe I soffre more disease then any man on live doos in like case, for the grete desire that I haue to be between
 30 youȝ armes. Bot by the grace of God I shall be in shorte tyme, for itt be oon of the grettest desires that myn herтт (has)."² ¶ "My swete lorde and loue, wytt ye wele that all youȝ desiȝ be myn, ne we ough to desiȝ noo thyng bot that

¹ W, *fayth*. R, *en bonne foy*.

² W, *hath*. R, *ait*.

shuld turne to goode fame; so ye haue doone ryght wele—for evyll sayers.” Thus spake they enughe to gedre and aftre they clipped and kyssed to gedre and comforted aythre othre. And thus the fest lasted xv days.

5 ¶ And when all was doon, he mustred his people. And the Bretanes weſ by estimacion iiij^m and v C men of armes; and of the Normanes xij C all redy—and weſ payd for vj monethes. Itt was a faiſ sight to see theym all to gedre, with the men of Englund.

10 Ponthus toke leve of the kyng and of Sydon. And by grete flaterye Guenelete laboured so that he abode with the kyng and with Sydone as gouernouſ of theym; and Ponthus betoke hym a grete part of his tresouſ to kepe. So ther was wepyng enughe at the departyng of Ponthus and of Sydone
15 and of hiſ gentyllwomen. Ponthus kyssed hiſ and betoke hiſ the moste parte of his tresoure to kepe.

And then he departed and went by londe and passed by Namptes and¹ yelde hym to the havyn of the toure of Dorbendelle,¹ wheſ as was a grete navye; for theſ arrived Geffray
20 de Lazynyen and Andrewe de La Toure, whiche had a grete fellishipp. And Ponthus receyved theym with grete ioye as for twoo of the best knyghtes, that he loued, and gave theym grete gyftes. And aftre arrived Guyllem de Roches and othre moo of dyuers contrees. Ponthus gave theym mony
25 grete gyftes, so that they mervelled of his grete larges and said, “He is worthie to gouerne and to conqueſ all the worlde by his curtesie and faiſ gouernaunce.” And of his largenes he made to deliuer shippes to the capteyns, aftre theyſ people //
and itt was not long to all weſ shipped. And itt was a faiſ
30 syght to see the sales to gedre, for itt semed a forest.

They had wynd att wyll and passed the Ile of Lyon.² When they weſ iiij³ myles fro Colleyn, then Ponthus lete

¹ W, & came to sable danlon & to derbendelles. R, Et se rendit es salles de la tour dorbendelle.

² W, yle of doloron. Not in R. O, lisle dauleon.

³ W, a .vi. R, trois lieues.

caste ancoṛ and sayd to the captanes// “Itt behoues vs to
entre into the contrey toward Colloigne I myle or twoo then
and lete withdrawe the navye, for I wold not they knewe
ouṛ powaṛ—for many causes.” So they ordaned that in the
5 begynnynge of the day they departed. And so itt was doon.

And they arrived aganes the farthre side of the toune and
[*Fol. 192^b.] loded * all by nyght and then withdrewe the vesselles agane
faṛ into the see, that they weṛ not perceyved. And they that
weṛ loded putt theym in a valley beside a wode and hid
10 theym in the most prevey wise that they couthe.

And then Pontus leped on hors bak and come to the wod
side to se wheṛ he couth fynde any pouere man to euqueṛ of
the gouernaunce of the contrey. And att the last he come to
a chappell ryght deuoute. And a litle befor day the Erle
15 of Destrue, which was vnclē to Pontus, and Patrices the
knyght, whiche had saved Pontus and the xiiij children and
had ben fauorable to the Cristen people and abode after the
grace of God, when he wolde delyuer the contrey,—went on
pylgrimage to this chappell, by cause they wold not be aspyed
20 of the Saresyns. Whils they weṛ ther in theyṛ prayers, so
come Pontus rydyng by the chappell, and lyght doune of
his hors and entred into the chappell. And when he saw
twoo men knelyng on theiṛ knees, he had grete ioy therof
and trowed that they weṛ cristened. And when they had
25 asspyed Pontus, they weṛ a ferde and rose vp sodanly. And
Pontus asked, “Who be ye? Name youṛ selfe hardely and
tell me what lawe ye hold.” Then they answerd and said,
“With Godes mercy, we wolle not forsake ouṛ Creator, for
we be cristened.” Said his vnclē, “And we pray you tell vs
30 your name, for we like youṛ fellishipp passyngly wele in ouṛ
hertes.” “In feith,” said he, “my name be Pontus, sonne
vnto the kyng of Spayne, on whoes saule God haue mercy.”
And when his vnclē herd that, he ranne and toke hym in his
armys and said, “Ay Lorde God, I haue nowe my desire.
35 Blessed be ouṛ Lorde Ihesu Crist, that I thurgh his grete
grace may see you.” And when Pontus knewe that he was

his vnclē and sawe the goode chere that he made hym, then he had grete pitee and said, "By God *Ser*, ye reioyse me gretly in myn hert, and ye say me trouthe." And anoon it waxed lyght day, that he knewe hym wele; and then they
 5 caste wepyng eyen echon on othre.

The Erle said, "Ay swete frende, howe durste ye come thus, for if ye weŕ asspyed, ye be bot deid." "Fair uncle," said Ponthus, "I am not allone, bot I haue ryght neghe me *xviii*¹ thovsand armed men, as all the floure of Englonde, of Scotland,
 10 of Irlond, and of Bretan, and of the contree aboute." And when he herd that, he kneled doune and thouked God, and said that the (countre) is all holle as itt was wonte to be before, bot that they be tributories to the kyng Brodas. And then he shewed hym the knyght Patrices, that had saued hym
 15 and his felowes in the shipp, and told hym that he had saued the contrey. Then Ponthus thonked hym hertely and led hym furth to see his people. And when he sawe theym, he had grete ioye.

"Theŕ be nomore to doo," said the knyght, "bot lete
 20 ordayne youŕ batelles and putt theym theŕ as I shall tell you in oon partie." So they ordaned the batelles and putt thre² thovsand men aside in a valey; and the remenaunt abode styll, excepte v hunderith which went with Patrices into a secrete place, into the tyme that the Saresyns weŕ issued oute
 25 of the toune;—and shuld Patrices and his people come to the toune as thogh they weŕ sent fro the kyng to kepe the toune.

And when the Erle of Destrue sawe his sonne Pollides, which was a faiŕ knyght, he blessed hym and said, "This assemblye be made by ouŕ Lorde Ihesu Criste, which has
 30 gyven vs grace to fynde the ryght lorde of this contrey." [**Fol. 193.*] And then he said, "Lordes, ordayne you in array, * for I wolle goo to the kyng Brodas and tell hym that Cristen people be entred into the londe to pyll the contre. And then he wolle haste hym as faste as he canne, with fewe people and withouten

¹ R, the same. W, *.xxviii.*

² R, *iiij^m.* W, *fourē th.*

ordenaunce, wherby he shall be more easily conquered. Ther for sendes a litle balange^r to feche and make redy all the othre shippes, and when they be comen, putt fire in sume olde hous; and then he wolle trowe that you^r power^e be not so grete as it
 5 is, wherfor he wolle dysordeyn hym, withouten any ordenaunce making^e."

Then the Erle toke his leve and departed and come to the toune ryght erly. He come to the kyng as man affrayd; the kyng rose vp, and he saluyd hym by Mahounde; and then he
 10 said vnto the kyng, "Se^r, the Cristen be comen to robbe and to pyll the contrey, and they be bot a leke frome the toune." "Be they mony?" said the kyng. "Ser, I wote neuer," said he, "bot as fa^r as I canne vndrestond, they be into a *hij*¹ shippes." "Fye!" said he. "Be they noo moo? By Ma-
 15 hounde, in evyll tyme be they comen, so I shall tell you; for I dremed this nyght that I become a grete, blak wolfe, and that sett vpon me a grete, whyte grehounde and a brachete, and the grehounde slewe me." "Ay Ser," said the Erle, "ye shuld not beleve in dremes." "Ye say sothe," said the kyng.
 20 "Goo and make to bloo trumpettes and doo crye that euery man arme hym. So we (shall) take the fals rebawdes and robbers on the see, whiche I shall make all to be slayne and to be drawn at² hors tales." "Ye say wele," said the Erle, whiche thoght that itt shuld not be so.

25 The Erle went furth and armed hym and made to crye that euery man shuld arme hym. So euery man armed hym and leped on hors bak. The kyng went oute armed ryght rycheley and went oute of the toune withouten makeng of any ordenaunce,—bot who so myght goo, went. So there went furth
 30 moo then xij thovsands on hors bak beside fotemen, as archers and alblasterers.

Pontus had ordaned his batelles and had sett in a valey iiij thovsands men of armes for to fall betwene theym and the toune. And Ser Patryke come with v hunderyth men into a

¹ Exactly the *thre score* of W.

² MS. *and*.

secrete place to wynne the toune, and he abode tyll he sawe his tyme to departe.

The kyng smote his hors with the spurres on that partie wheȝ as he sawe the smoke and loked to the see and sawe not
 5 past lx schippes, and said, "Nowe on theym! They be all shent. Theyȝ Ihesu Criste shall neuer helpe theym, bot they shall dye ane¹ evyll dethe." He abode not, to he was past the place where as the iiij thovsand weȝ. Then he beheld befor hym and sawe the grete batelles in ordenaunce. So he
 10 was amervelled of this dede and went to haue withdrawn hym and to haue sett his men in ordenaunce. And yitt he ordered so that a grete partie was in ordenaunce, for he was a wyse knyght and a hardye in armes; and as he made an ordenaunce, he herd a grete crye between hym and the toune
 15 and sawe his men flee toward hym. Then he said, "There is noo fleyng. Rynne we vpon [theym] sharpely." So he smote his hors with the spurrys and assemelyd with the batelles. So he iusted with Geffray de Lazynyen, the whiche was not all redye, and they gave grete strokes. Bot the kyng toke
 20 Geffray at a trave[r]s and ouerthrewe hym. The kyng lad hond vppon his sworde and said, "Mahounde helpe!" And the furst that he smote he ouerthrewe hym, and did marvelous dedes of armes.

The batell begane ryght hard and sharpe. Ponthus, that
 25 hade grete desire forto doo dedes of armes—in esspeciall on theym that held his roialme, he smote on the ryght syde and
 [*Fol. 193^b.] * on the lefte syde and bett doune Saresyns and slewe all that euer he smote. The Saresyns held theym aboute theiȝ kyng, the which slewe and manhened mony of ouȝ men. Andrewe
 30 de La Touȝ sawe Geffray de Lazynyen on fote, that myght not lepe vp agane and was sore bressed and in grete perell; so he smote a Turke and ouerthrewe hym and toke his hors and, in despite of theym all, led hym to Geffray and said vnto hym, "Faiȝ fellowe, lepe vp, for heȝ be perilous abydyng on
 35 fote." Geffray lepe vp and thonked hym; and when they

¹An imperfect *d* is changed to an *e*.

twoo were to gedre, they made grete slaghtre of Saresyns. And wele bestirred theym the Bretanes and the Herupoyse. Theȝ was grete cry.

The kyng did bloo a trumpett and gederyd his menye and
 5 gave stronge batell to ouȝ men. Ponthus loked vp and per-
 ceived the kyng, that had slayne his fadre, and howe that by
 hym mony men weȝ slayne, for he did grete dedes of armes
 with his bodye, and was ryght richely arrayd and baȝ a croune
 vpon his helme. Ponthus had ryght grete ioye that he had
 10 founde hym and went toward hym and gave hym a grete
 stroke, and the kyng smote hym agayne. So theȝ was stronge
 batell betwen theym, for the kyng was ryght strong and of
 grete heritt; bot Ponthus gave hym so mony strokes that he
 mad hym all astoned and to stowpe; and then he cutted the
 15 lases of his helmete, and then the kyng had bot litle strenght
 to endure. And Ponthus smote hym wele with all his strenght
 and smote ay to his neke vndre the helme, so that he fell doune
 deid. And when his men sawe itt, they wrong theyȝ hondes
 and weȝ all dyscomfeted.

20 And on that othre side the iiij thovsant men come behynd
 theym and keped theym in, soo that theȝ escaped noone, bot
 all went to the sworde. They weȝ all putt to dethe withouten
 any mercy.

Seȝ Patryke went oute of his enbushement and come furst
 25 with .l. armed men to gete the gate of the toune, and com-
 maunded that the remenaunt shuld folowe aftre. So he come
 to the gate, and they knewe hym wele and asked hym, howe
 itt went with the kyng and his people. And he said, "Ryght
 evyll."¹ Then he entered and wanne the gate and keped itt
 30 to the remenaunt come to hym. Then he sett goode kepe at
 the gate and bad that noo man shuld entre, vnto Ponthus
 come. Then he went into the toune, sekyng houses² for
 Saresyns, & thoo that he founde he putt theym to dethe. So
 Ser Patryke went crying into the toune, "A morte Saresyns!"

¹ *evyl* is written upon an erasure.

² MS. *horses*. R, *hostelz*. W, *houses*.

and, "Live¹ cristened!" The Cristen men that weŕ in the toune, which weŕ in *seruage* and yelded truage, they made a crosse with theyŕ armes, and so they founde noo body that dide theym harme—no of noo thyng that longed to them,
 5 for Ser Patryke had so ordaned. The toune was wonne, for all men of defence were goon to the batell² wheŕ as they weŕ slayne, moo then xxvij³ thovsands.

When this discomfatuŕ was doon, the Cristen people soghte the felde, euery man to fynde his frende, his cosyn, and his
 10 maistre. So there were not mony sleyn of grete men of name. Of Bretane, theŕ was found deid of barounes and of knyghtes; —Geffray d'Auncenys and Bryan de Pounte, Roland de Corquyan, Henry de Syen, Barnaby de Seynt⁴ Gyles; Herupoys, —Huberd de Brice, Hamelyn de Mountelyes, and Eustace de
 15 Lay Poys; of Petons,—Andrewe de Lay Marche, John de Lay Garnache, and Huberd d'Argenten, and of knyghtes,—Amaulry de Lay Forest and Henry de Basoches; and of Mayn,—Hardenyr de Sylle and Oliveŕ de Douncelles, and
 [*Fol. 194.]
 20 of knyghtes,—Graue de Crusses, William du Sages; of Normandes,—* William Tesson, Guy Pamell and Piers de Villers and othre v knyghtes moo. And of Englonde and Scotelond ther were fewe slayne, for they weŕ in the rereward; and they of the base marches bare the bronte, for they weŕ in the vaward. Ponthus *commaunded* to take all the deid bodies of
 25 the Cristen and maked theym to be buryed in the chirche of Columpne and did ordeyn for theym all the *seruice* and worshipp that myght be doon, in so myche that euery man prased hym for his goode dedes. The Cristen people were serched and layd to gedre, the deid on that oon syde, the hurtt
 30 on that othre side.

When this was doon, Ponthus and his batelles did ryde vnto the toune. Theŕ was delyuered to euery lorde, afre that he had of men, stretes and howses, and did fynde so myche

¹ MS. *love*. R, *viuent*. W, *lyue*.

² b written over a p.

³ R, *par extimacion xxvi^m*. W, *xxv*.

⁴ MS. *Syen*. W, *Bernarbe de saynt Gyle*. R, *bernard de saint gille*.

riches and vtell that the pouerest had enughe. It was cryed that noo man shuld take noght fro the Cristen people of the toune, ne doo theym noo wrong—and noo more they dide.

Ponthus rode streght to the grete chirche and offred vpp
 5 his hors and his harnes and did (do) syng thre messes and
 thonked Gode, weppyng, of his grace that he had sent hym.
 Afre that, the Erle his vncle and Ser Patryk come to hym and
 asked counsell what they shuld doo. And Ser Patryke said,
 “I counsell you befor all thynges, that vnto theym that has
 10 any castelles or townes in kepyng, or fortresses, be *lettres* wreten
 and sent to theym, as it weŕ frome theyre kyng, that afre the
 syght of the *lettres*, they come to this toune, bothe day and
 nyght, in all the haste that they myght. And sume shall be
 taken here and sume we take by enbushementes that we shall
 15 lay in *certayn* places. And so we shall haue the moste parte
 of theym, and so shall we euer haue the lesse to doo.” This
 goode counsell was holden in suche maner that frome the
 townes and castells all they come forward toward the toune
 of Columpne; and sume weŕ take in the toune and putt to
 20 dethe and the remenaunt distressed by enbushements, for they
 weŕ ouerthrowen in dyuers places. When the Cristen people
 herd of the dyscomfatuŕ of the Saresyns, they rosse by townes
 and by castelles and slewe of theym as mony as they couth
 fynde, and so long was the were led that all the londe was
 25 clensted of theym and deliueryd; for sume of theym dide yeld
 theym and were conuerted, and Ponthus gave theym goode
 enughe to lyve vpon; and the remenaunte that myght flee,
 fled, wherof sume were slayne by the Spaneyardes and by the
 reaume of Castell, and othre were perysshed in dyuers places
 30 myscheuously.

¶ Wherfor the Sawdeyn of Babilone was ryght sorofull thus
 to haue loste his thre sonnes and his men. He was ryght
 angre with Mahounde and said before all men, as a man oute
 of his wytt, that the God Crucifyed had ouercomen hym and
 35 that he was of more vertue than Mahound, when he had not

saved his sonnes and his men. And so there was grete complaynte for theym in Babilone and in Damasse.

So I turne agane to Ponthus and so here folowes afre the polytyke rewle and demeane of Ponthus and of his gouernance.

[**Cap. XXX.** How Ponthus was crowned kyng; and how at the feste he knewe his modre among the xiiij pouere people; and how he made the Erle of Destruie and Ser Patryk to be keepers of his reame and to obey vnto the quene, his modre.]

Ponthus made leches to be sought forto heall the people that was wonded and hurte in the batell, and hym self did visete theym ofte tymes and made to be broght to theym all thynges that theym (neded). He fested the lordes and all his fellisshipp and gave theym gyftes. And also he founde in a toure the grete tresoure of the kyng Brodas, the which [*Fol. 194^b.] was * a grete thyng to tell. And when he had ouerryden the contrey and clensed itt of the mysbelevers, he founde myche people and the londe wele belabored, both of vynes and of corne.

From all the contrees the people come rynnnyng to see theyr ryghtwyse lorde, and as it had been to myracles. And they loued hym wele for his grete renoune and worthenes, his bountee and curtesie; for ther was noon so simple ne so pouere bot that he wold speke to theym and here theym mekely. He was right petuouse of the pouere people—he loued God and holy chirche.

And when he had doon this dede, he come to Colume and made there a grete feste and was crowned by the hondes of oon holy bischop. And thedre come to hym the kyng of Aragone, his vncler, that was brothre to his modre, the which had grete ioye to see hym and of his victorie. And he tolde hym howe the kyng Brodas had wered vpon hym and howe ther was taken a trefy between theym to a certan day—vnto the tyme that God wold sett a remedye,—“and thurgh his

grace he has ryght wele purveyd of his pitee by you." Thus complened the kyng to his newewe and yitt he told hym howe that he abode the comyng of the kyng of Fraunce and the kyng of Spayne, that shuld haue comen this someȝ,—“bot itt
 5 is no nede.”

The feste was grete of the kynges coronacion and theȝ weȝ made mony straunge thynges. The grete lordes of the contre come and did theyȝ homage. And also the faiȝ ladyes had grete ioie that they were comen oute of hell, and of seruage
 10 wheȝ as they had levyd in sorowe and in hevynes; and nowe the[i] be broghte into ioie and into myrth and into Paradise, as theym semeth. They liked wele theyȝ kyng, in so myche that they hade grete ioie to luke vpon hym. And all maner of people thonkhed God deuoutely of theyȝ delyueraunce.
 15 Betwen the courses the ladyes did syng,¹ and theȝ were mony vowes to the pope,¹ the which were longe to tell. And the kyng did bryng and presente by xij faiȝ ladyes and xij olde knyghtes grete gyftes and iewelles—sume of faiȝ coursyr and sume of faiȝ cuppys of gold and of sylveȝ, of faiȝ clothes of
 20 gold and of sylke, and of mony othre grete iewelles,—to the knyghtes and to the cheftanes, so that all men weȝ amervelled of his grete larges. He was a man ryght plesaunt and of grete curtesie and of goode condicions.

So ther fell a grete mervell of the custome that was that
 25 tyme vsed; for itt was so, that befor the kyng, shuld be serued xij pouere men for the loue of God and his apostelles. So it befell that the Erle of Destruie, the kynges vnclie, went visyttyng the tables, and as God wold he beheld the table of the pouere people and sawe a womman luyng vpon the kyng.
 30 And as she beheld hym, the teres fell doune from hiȝ eyn. The Erle loked wisely vpon hiȝ and avised hiȝ so wele, that by a token that she had in hiȝ chyn he knewe wele that it was the quene, modre vnto Pontius. And when he see hiȝ in so pouere astate that hiȝ gooune was all clovted and to-rent, he

¹ Not in R. In W only,—*There was songes and many mynstrelsyas.*

myght not kepe hym fro wepyng. So his hert swemyd¹ for pitee to see hiȝ in so pouere degree, and when he myght speke, he thonked God and went behynde the kyng his neviewe and said vnto him, "Ser, heȝ be a grete mervell." "Wherof?"
 5 said the kyng. "The best and the holyest ladye that I knowe, my ladie the quene, your modre, is her-in." "Wher be she?"
 [*Fol. 195.] said he. And he for grete payne myght not * tell hym, for pitee; and when he myght speke, he told hym in counsell and said, "Ser, see ye hiȝ sitt yondre with the xiiij pouereȝ at the
 10 furst ende of the table." And Ponthus beheld hiȝ and he perceyved hiȝ chere; and anon she putt hiȝ hooȝ before hiȝ eyen and weped; and the kyng had grete pitee in his hertt. Then said he vnto his vncle, "Make noo semeland, that noon espie itt; bot when we be vp fro the table, I shall into my warderopp,
 15 and bryng ye hyr prively to me." And so itt was doone.

When the tables weȝ taken vp and grace yolden to God, the kyng departed priuely and went into his warderopp, and the Erle his vncle broght thedre his modre priuely. And when Ponthus sawe hiȝ, he kneled doune befor hiȝ and toke
 20 of his croune and sett itt on hiȝ hede, and sche toke hym vp all wepyng and kyssed hym and halsed hym, and sore they weped, she and hiȝ sonne and the Erle. And when they myght speke, Ponthus said vnto hiȝ, "Ay Madame, so myche pouertee and dysease as ye haue soffred and endured!" "Ay my swete
 25 knyght and sonne," said she, "I am comen oute of the paynes of hell, and God has given me grete Paradyse, when itt has plessyd hym to yeve me so long live that I may see you with myn eyen² and that I see vengeance for the dethe of my lorde your fadre, which the tyranes putt to dethe, and also that I
 30 see the contree voyded oute of the mysbeleve and the holy lawe of Ihesu Christe to be serued. And I wote wele that this sorowe and trouble has endured this xiiij³ yeres, as by a

¹ W, *symmed*. R, *Le cuer lui emfla de pitie*.

² R omits everything from here to the end of the paragraph except the single sentence,—*Car les aduersitez qui sont venues en ce royaume est une vengeance de dieu*. H and O agree with D and W.

³ H, *xiiij*.

chastesyng of God (for) the grete delites and lustes that were vused in this reame. So me semes nowe that God has mercy of his people, that he has keped you and sent you to deliuiere the contrey of the mysbeleue." Ryght wele spake the quene
 5 and wisely, as an olde¹ lady as she was.

"Nowe I pray you," said the kyng, "tell me howe ye escaped and howe ye were saved." "My faiȝ sonne, I shall tell you. When the crye was in the mornyng in the tounne, and your fadre slayne, I was in my bed; and he armed hym
 10 with nomore then with an hawberke and his helme and ran furth withoute any more abydyng, as the hardest knyght that was, as men said. When he was departed and when I herde the crye, I was sore aferd and toke oon of my wommens gounes and went my way with my lavendeȝ; and I fonde of
 15 aventure the posterne gate open, that sume people had opened, and so I went oute and went into the wod fast by the laundes, wheȝ as dwelled an holy hermyte, the (whiche)² had a chappell and a well and a lugge at the wod syde; so I abode ther. And my chaumberlane,³ which was wele aged, come euery
 20 day to feche almus att the kynges hous, and therby we lived, the hermyte, she, and I. And so ye may see that God has saved me." "In goode faith," said the kyng hiȝ son, "ye led an holye live." And so sche did for she wered the hayre and went gyrd with a corde, and fasted myche, and was a full
 25 holy lady.

The kyng had grete ioy and grete pitee of his modre. Then he sent for hys tailyour and did shape for hiȝ gyrtelles, gounes, and mantelles—bot⁴ blewe and purpyll—and made theym to be furred with armyn and sables.⁵ And when she
 30 was so arrayd, hiȝ semed a full faiȝ lady.⁵ And when they come to sopeȝ, they broght in the quene rychely arrayd. And when the kyng of Arragonne, hiȝ brother, sawe hiȝ, he toke hiȝ in his armes and kyssed hiȝ, for he wened she had

¹ W, *holy*. H, *sainte*.

⁴ W, *bothe*.

² MS. *roche*. R, *qui*.

⁵ Not in W and R.

³ W, *chamberer*. R, *chamberie*.

[*Fol.195^b.] ben deid. The lordes and the ladys of Galice had grete *
 ioye of the quene and did hiȝ myche worshipp, for they held
 hiȝ for a goode and an olde¹ ladye and were all amervelled
 fro whens she come, for they went all that she had been dede.
 5 Hir brothre the kyng of Aragon was sett at soper at the table
 ende, and aftre the quene, and then hiȝ sonne Ponthus, for
 the day of his coronacion he must kepe his astate. The quene
 was of goodly porte and semed wele to be a grete ladye. She
 was ryght humble and had ryght grete ioye of the worshipp
 10 and goodnes that she sawe in hiȝ son. Then she said to hiȝ
 son, "Fair son, I haue grete desire to see ouȝ doghtre youȝ
 wyf, for the grete goodenes that I haue herd of hir." "Ma
 dame," said he, "ye shall see hiȝ hastely, if it be pleasyng to
 God." That day passed with grete ioye and dissportes of
 15 ladis and daunsyng and synghyng, and of othre maner
 of plays.

That nyght Ponthus dremed that a bere had dovoured his
 lady Sydone, and that she cryed and said, "Ay Ponthus my
 swete lorde, for the loue of God, soffre me not thus to dye."
 20 Thus a vision² fell to hym twys or thryse; and so he was
 sore affrayd therwith and had grete mervell in his hertt what
 itt betokened. Att morowe in the sprynhyng of the day he
 called vp his men and sent for his vncle and for Ser Patryk.
 So they come to hym and he told theym his avysions and
 25 said, "Myn hert telles me that my wyfe has sume sekenes, or
 is in grete trowble. She be so, that I wolle no lengre abyde
 here; bot I wolle go to see as faste as I canne for to see hiȝ."
 When they sawe his wyll, they ne durst ganesay hym.

Then said the kyng, "Fair Lordes, I thonke God and you,
 30 this contrey be clensted of the mysbelevers and I thynke that
 by you twoo the contrey has ben saved and the people keped
 fro the dethe,—by youȝ goode revoles. It was Godes wyll.
 So I bethinke me of Moyses and Aaron that God sett to save
 the people of Israel. So ye shall haue grete merite and the

¹ W, *holy*. And did . . . ladye is lacking in R.

² W, *This avysyon*. R, *ceste aduision*, is probably the original reading.

guerdone of God ; and as for me, I be ryght myche beholden to you. Wherfor, faiȝ vnclē, I make you my lyeu-tenaunt, and Ser Patryk shall be senysshall and constable of this reame ; for it be goode reason that ye, that has doone so
 5 myche goode and saved the contre, haue the revoll and the gouernaunce therof. And ye, Ser Patryke my dere frend, ye saued me ; so I shall yeve you londe and goode, so largely that ye shall not lese youȝ true service.” Seȝ Patryk kneled doune and thonked hym.¹ Then he comaunded theym that
 10 the state of his modre weȝ keped, and that she shuld haue hiȝ awn commandemente, as it weȝ to his awn propre persone ; and also that they shuld sustene as wele the pouere as the ryche and that the ryche shuld not ouerlede² the pouere. And then he comaunded theym to repare the chirches of
 15 glasen wyndowes and of all othre thynges,—wheȝ as they were broken, to make theym vp agane,—“and I shall take you x³ thovsant besauntes of golde therto. He ordaned ryght wele for his reame all that neded.

And then he went and herd thre messes and sent his dynneȝ
 20 to shipp, and toke his leve of his modre the quene and said vnto hiȝ, heryng all men, “Madame I leve you the reame and the tresouȝ that I haue, all in youȝ demeyn and gouernaunce. I haue commaunded and commaundes all men to obeye you as they wold doo to myn awn persone ; and, for
 25 the better, I leve you myn vnclē and Ser Patryk my goode knyght, the which I haue made constable and senysshall of my reame, and myn vnclē my lyeu-tenaunt.” So he toke leve wepyng. And she prayd hym to come agane in shorte tyme, for she wold fayne se his wyfe. And he toke
 [*Fol. 196.]
 30 his leue of the lordes and * ladys of the contrey and went to the schippes.

Euery man arrayd hym and dressed hym to the see. The kyng Pontus come to the barounes and told what avision⁴ was there befallen to hym ; wherfor he myght neuer be at

¹ *thonked hym* is repeated in the MS.

² W, *overlay*.

³ R, *xx*.

⁴ MS. *a vision*.

hertes ease, to he had sen the quene his wyfe. So he toke the see and saled so long to he see the costes of Bretan.

And here I leve of the kyng Ponthus and retournes agane to the kyng of Bretan and to his doghtre Sydone—howe itt
 5 befell theym of the tresone that Guenelete wroght when Ponthus was in Galyce.

[**Cap. XXXI.** How Guenelete by fals lettres, that hir lorde was deid, wold make Sydone to marye hym, and she fled to a toure for to defende hir; how Guenelete famysshed
 10 hir and the kyng of Bretayn in the toure vnto she must nedes yeld hir.]

G uenelete was made kepe^r of the kyng of Bretane and of his doghtre Sydone, for Ponthus had yeven hym all the gouernaunce as ye haue herd before, wherfor he had grete
 15 ioye. Neuerthe les he myght not kepe ne chastie hym selfe from tresone. So he bethoghte hym that he wold haue Sydone to his wyfe by sume maner of way, and that he wold be lorde and kyng of that contrey avthre by fai^r maner or by fowle, and that he wold put hym in aventure. So the devyll temped
 20 hym so myche that he did stuff the citees and the castelles, and sent for souldours and yeve theym syluer in honde forto haue the loue of men of armys. ¹So thurgh his syluer of evyll vertue ¹the goode men putt theym self in perell of dethe. And when he had stuffed all the fortresses (he) ²did make a fals
 25 seale of Ponthus armys and made twoo fals lettres, oon to the kyng and an othre to his doghtre Sydone, the which specified that Ponthus recomaunded hym to the kyng, and that all his men we^r dyscomfeted and sleyn and hym selfe hurt to the dethe, withouten any remedye. So he prayd hym that for his
 30 welfare and for the welfare of his, that he wold yeve his doghtre to Guenelete, and that bettre he myght not besett hi^r. And

¹ W, *So is syluer of an euyl vertue for.* R makes it still more general:—*Si est l'argent de male vertue. Car pour lauoir len si met a lauenture de mort.*

² MS. *and.*

for to make the mariage he yeave hym all his tresoure that he broght oute of Englonde. Thes *lettres* weȝ ryght wele devysed. And in the *lettre* of Sydone was, how he prayd hiȝ and required hiȝ, for all the loue that euer was between theym, to take his
 5 cosyn Guenelete.

And when the kyng and his doghtre sawe thes *lettres*, it is not to aske of the grete sorowe and hevynes that they made. Sydone swoned often tymes and weped and whissed afre hym, the whiche myght not be oute of hiȝ mynde. She drewe
 10 and rent hiȝ¹ fare² here and made so grete sorowe that itt was grete petee to see. So the ladys and the courte weȝ in grete hevynes for hym and said, "Allas! What damege! What pitee! The flouȝ of knyghthode, the flouȝ of all gentyllnes, the myrrour of all goode maners be dystroyd." The toune,
 15 the burgeses, and all the comon people weped and soroed for theyȝ frendes and theyȝ kynesmen, for they trowed that they had ben all deyde.

Theȝ myght noo man comforth Sydone. "Allas!" sayd she. "He was that man in whome all bountee and trewth
 20 dwelled, and by (whome) I³ thoght to haue had all my ioye, and the which was so free and so trewe and loued me so wele and was so likly to haue holden the people in reste and peace. How has God soffred suche aventure agane hym and agane me? Allas sorofull wreche! What shall I doo?" So theȝ
 25 was noon so hard a hert bot that it wold haue had pitee of hiȝ; and this sorowe endured more then viij days withoute cessyng.

And Guenelete come and said to the kyng, howe Pontus required hym to gyve hym his doghtre. So he flatered hym
 30 full faiȝ and said that he shuld *serue* hym and hiȝ and worshipp theym and kepe the reaume, and that Pontus had gyven hym golde and syluer more then the reaume was worth.

[*Fol. 196^b.] So he offred⁴ to hym and * said, "Ser, I pray you goo and

¹ ms. *his*.

² *r* apparently altered from a *c*.

³ After *I*, *trowed* cancelled by the rubricator. W, *thought*.

⁴ *Si lui offre et dit*, the exact original of D's reading. W, *offred it*.

speke with your doghtre, that she wold consente therto." The kyng was aged, so he wyst not what to say. And Guenelete did so myche by his subtile wytt that he made the kyng to consente. The kyng was aged and come to his doghtre and
 5 comforthed [hiȝ] the fairest wyse that he myght, and said to hiȝ that dyscomforthe did bot greve to hiȝ withoute any helpe to hym, or to his reaume, and sith that Ponthus required it, that she shuld haue Guenelete, for the loue of hym and for the grete tresouȝ that he had gyven hym; and also that he
 10 shuld obey vnto hym and kepe his reaume for to revle it,—
 "for if (I) gyve you to any kyng, he wolle lede you in-to his awn contrey, and so shall we then abyde withouten gouernaunce or gouernouȝ." When Sydone herd hiȝ fadre thus speke, she had grete mervell and said, that, God be pleased,
 15 he shal not be hiȝ husbonde and that (she) shuld rathre be barren.¹ And the kyng, that loued hiȝ so myche (sayd), sith it liked hiȝ not, she shuld not haue hym; bot bad hiȝ be of goode comforth.

So he come to Guenelete and said vnto hym, that his
 20 doghtre wold haue noo husbond at this tyme. "Howe!" said Guenelete, "Refuses she me? It shall not be all at hiȝ wyll." So he come to hiȝ and made myche of hiȝ and gave hiȝ fair language,—howe t[hat]² he² thynkes to serve hiȝ and to obey hiȝ, and she to be lady of all, and that noght shuld be
 25 doon in the reaume bot by hiȝ commaundement; and howe he has the grete tresoure of hir said lorde, that was wonne vpon the Saresyns, the whiche was yeven hym by hys lettres. Myche he made of hiȝ and flattered hiȝ, bot all avayled hym not; for she sware to hym that she shuld not be wedded of
 30 all that yere, for noon that spake with tunge. "Howe!" said he, "If youȝ fadre commaunde you, wolle ye disobey hym?" "My lorde my fadre may commaunde me, what so euer that it please hym," said she, "bot forto dye, I shall abyde all

¹ W, *rather dye*. R, *dist . . . quelle seroit auant beguine*. D appears to have mis-read, *baraigne*.

² MS. *the*. W, *that he*.

this yer. Afte, say I not bot I wolde obey hym." "Yea?" sayd Guenelete, "Make ye refuse of me? And ye wolde not obey to the *lettres* of your forsaid lorde—the whiche ye desired and loued so myche, and that ther was no thyng bot that ye
 5 wold doo itt for hym—and sith ye lyst not (to) obey to his prayer and his *lettre*, and also ye list not to obey to the *commandement* of your fader,—by the faythe that I owe vnto hym, bot if ye take othre counsell, I doute ye wolde be angreed." So he threte hir, when by fairnes he se that
 10 he myght not haue hir. And then he says, sith that he has the *lettre* of hir forsaid lorde and the conentyng of hir fadre, that he wold haue hir, whethre she wold or noo. "Yea," said she, "be I in that *partie*?" "Yea," sayd he, "by my faithe, ye shall see what may befall." "Rathre," said she, "I shall
 15 haue every lyme of me hewen frome othre." "Yea," said he, "it shall be seen all in tyme." So he departed as a wode-man, for he wened not to fale of hir.

Sydne was all abasshed, and thought in hir hert that it was not the furst treson and falsnes that he had doone. So she
 20 thought wele that the *lettres* were fals, for othre tymes had he doon¹ to vndrestond that Pontius was deid. So she called thre² squyers and twoo³ yomen into hir chaumbre, that she had, and called Ellyous and othre twoo gentylwomen, and said vnto theym, that she doved hir of Guenelete and shewed
 25 theym how he was hote of loue, wenyng to haue hir by fair
 [*Fol. 197.] *maner* * or by fowle *maner*,—"for he be malicius and per-
 aventure wold wyrke by strenght. So I haue purposed that we shall goo into yonde toure, and doo be thedre vitell, and
 ther shall we abyde, vnto the tyme that we haue sume rescouse
 30 of our frendes, or of sume of the barounes, or elles haue herd the trouthe of my lorde Pontius." They said that she had wele said. And so it was doon. They dide bere brede and wyne in botelles, in barettes, and in pottes, flesche and cheses, and all thyng that theym neded, as long as they had lase;

¹After *doon*, that cancelled by the rubricator.

²W, *two*. R, *deux*.

³W, *iii*. R, *deux chamberlans*.

and then they schitt the dore, and with barres of yrne, and bare vp rokkes and stones for to defende it, for Guenelete had thoght to haue taken hiȝ agane hiȝ wyll and to haue doon hiȝ outorage, if she wold not haue concented.

- 5 So he come into hiȝ chaumbre and when he fonde hiȝ not, he serched the warderoppes, wheȝ as he did fynd a gentyll-woman, the whiche tolde hym that she was withdrawn into the toure, and how she had vitelled it and stuffed it; and when he herd that, he loked as a wodeman and come before
10 the toure and prayd hiȝ full fayre to open hym the dore, and swore by his feith that he wold not mysdoo hiȝ. But Sydone, whiche knewe wele his vntrouthe, said he shuld not come in by that meane. He thret hiȝ sore and swore that he shuld take hiȝ by force & make hiȝ his wench, if she wold not take
15 with to be his wyfe, and bad hiȝ chese whethre she wold doo. "Ay," said she, whiche was ryght angre to here the yngudely wordes, "Traitouȝ thou shal not come therto, and God wolle, for thowe shall dye an evyll dethe for this fals entrepryse." Then he waxed angree and sayd, sith that he had doone so
20 myche, he wold fenyshe itt, what so euer befell.

- So he toke the kyng and put hym in prisone, for fere that he shuld gedre men of armes aganes hym; and then he come to the burges and said vnto theym, howe Sydone was yeven hym of hiȝ husbonde by goode *lettres*, and also the
25 kyng hiȝ fadre was accorded therto by cause that she wold haue ben weddyd to a man of noght, which wolde haue hated and dystroyed the contree; "bot," said he, "if that I haue hiȝ, I shal kepe youȝ fraunches and youȝ libertees and I shall kepe you as the gold doos the stone. So I haue sett the kyng
30 in a chaumbre, for he be all doyled and has noo wytt, and he wold lyghtly concente to the lewde counsell¹ of his doghtre; wherby the contree myght be loste, if it befall as they thynke. Bot I shall (kepe) theym wele therfro, with Goddes helpe and youres, and to saue the wele-faiȝ of Bretane." So he gawe

¹ W, *courage*. R, *fol couraige*.

largely to theym, and putted to theym mony doutes, that myght noye hym,¹ and he did itt in suche wyse, wenyng to theym that he had sayd trouthe, wherfore they durst not ryse ne meve. And also he had mony straunge souldoures.

5 When he had spoken to the burges and to the people, he come to the toure and assailed itt. So theȝ was within bot v men a[nd] fouȝ wommen, that threwe doune grete stones and defended wele the toure. And also there was the most *partie* of theym that did bot feyne, for the[i] wold not that she were
10 taken. The sawte lasted a grete while and Guenelete had fayled of his entente; so he was ryght sorofull and angree and thoght at the lest he wold famyshe theym. "In goode faith," said Sydne, "we haue vytell enughe for a monethe day, and in the meane tyme God may helpe vs and sende vs
15 rescouse." When Guenelete vndrestode hiȝ, he went to haue [*Fol.197^b.] ronne wode for angre; for he was half dystrakked * by cause he had fayled of his purpose, and wold and wysshed that he had not begonne; bot sith he had vndretaken itt, he thoght that he wold fynyshe it, or elles dye therfore. So he sett
20 goode warde and watche aboute the toure, that theȝ shuld come no vytell to theym.

And then he bethoght hym of a grete malice, for he come to the kyng and prayd hym to goo to his doghtre, for he knewe wele that he myght turne hiȝ of hiȝ folye that she has
25 taken on honde; and tolde hym that he wold not famyshe hiȝ, bot fall into a tretee. The kyng, that was goode and true and thoght noon harme, went vp to his doghtre and told hiȝ howe she was in a way to be deid and shewed hiȝ mony ensaumples.
30 And she answeyrd hym to the contrarye, and howe she thoght wele the *lettres* was (false);—"and ye wote wele," said she, "that othre tymes he has sayd that he was deid. So I shal rathre dye, bot if I knowe the verray treuthe." "In goode faith," said the kyng, "it may wele be as ye say; for I knowe

¹ MS. *theym*. W, *that he supposed myght noye hym*/translating R, *qui lui pouvaient nuire*. I. e., "might hinder him" (Guen.).

noo man of knowlege that has ben theȝ, and harde is the werre, wher̃ as noon escapes." So they be sumwhat comforthed, for the grete vntreuthe that they knewe on hym.

Guenelete asked the kyng, that he sawe aboue at the wyn-
 5 dowe, "Ser, what wolleshe doo?" "So helpe me God," said
 the kyng, "I may not spede, for she be yitt all sorowfull and
 angree for hiȝ lorde, wherfor I may haue no goode answer̃."
 "No!" said Guenelete, "by the faith that I owe to God, ye
 shall abyde with hiȝ and beȝ heȝ fellishipp, forto ete pesen
 10 and ploumes; for ye shall bot¹ twoo dye for hungre, bot
 if I may haue hiȝ fellyshipp." So the kyng abode with his
 doghtre, wherfor she had the tittē pitee for the hungre and
 the dysease of hiȝ fadre. They had mete enughe iiij days or v.
 bot the vj^t day theyȝ vitelles fayled so that they had navthre
 15 bred nor flesch. So the[i] wer twoo days that they navthre ete
 ne dranke save a litle chese, and iche of theym a draghte of
 wyn. The kyng began forto feble, for Sydōne had noo more
 mete bot vj apyls, of the whiche she gave euery day twoo to
 hiȝ fadre. She weped and sorowed for the grete disease that
 20 hiȝ fadre was in, and that did hiȝ more sorowe than hiȝ awn
 peyn did. She loked often tymes oute at a wyndowe toward
 the citee and the see, if she myght se any thyng. So she
 wysshed ofte tymes afre Ponthus and then she weped and
 made myche sorowe, desyryng hiȝ awn dethe, and said to the
 25 kyng, "Ay my lorde, it had ben bettre for you that I had ben
 deid long agoo, then ye to soffre suche payne and so myche
 hungre for me." The kyng weped and sayd, "I had leuer
 dye for hungre then to se yonde traitouȝ gete you by this
 meane." Sydōne called hym,— "Fals traitouȝ and vntrewe,
 30 howe may thou soffre the kyng to dye, that is so trewe² a
 man? Allas!" said she, "Be thys the nurture that he has
 made of the, when thou has beseged hym and makes hym to
 dye for hungre and thirst, that oftentimes has gyven the
 goode mete and drynke? Be this the guerdon that thou
 35 yeldes hym?" She said hym myche shame, bot all aualed

¹ W, *bothe*. R, *tous deuz*.

² W, *good*. R, *bon*.

not; for he made his othe that he shuld make hym to dye for verray hungre, if she wold not concent to be his wyfe.

The kyng was almost deid for hungre and lay in his bed and myght not styrre. And when Sydon behelde hym she
 5 said that she weȓ leuer to dye, or to sorowe all hiȓ live then to see hiȓ fadre dye for hiȓ. Then she said to hym wepyng, "My ryght swete lorde and fadre, I may noo lengre soffre
 youȓ sorowe ne the hungre that ye abyde. Me is leuer to
 [*Fol. 198.] dye, or to be in sorowe all my live days, then to se * you in
 10 this case." The kyng weped and wist not what to say; for to see that he shuld haue hys doghtre by this way, it greved hym sore, and on that othre side, to see hym selfe and hiȓ to dye to gedre, itt did hym grete harme, for she shuld be cause of hiȓ awn dethe. So he sorowed sore and said that he had
 15 to long lived. So he couthe not counsell hym self and said vnto hiȓ, "Faiȓ doghtre, I wote not how we may doo. I ne wote what counsell I may yeve you—so myche sorowe I haue, bot to see you dye, I may not see it; and I wold that the dethe toke me, so that Pontius weȓ in this toune on live
 20 on the strong parte, for he wold venge hym wele on the traitour that wold have you agane youȓ wyll." And the squyers and the gentyllwomen, the whiche were at the dethe and wode for hungre,—it was noo mervell, for it was iiij days past or more sith they ete any maner of mete, and they said, "Ma
 25 dame, ye shal be cause of youȓ awn dethe and of the kynges youȓ fadre and of vs. It wer bettre to take the vnhappy ure¹ then to doo worse."

When she sawe that she must nedes doo it, for to save hiȓ fadre more then for hiȓ awn deth, which she sett bot easy by,
 30 then she rose vp and went to the wyndowe and did call Guenelete; and then she come agane and sent hiȓ fadre and badd hym speke to Guenelete, and if he myght fynde noo treetee that he shuld accorde with hym, so that he myght haue viij days or more respite to recouer vs of the hungre that (he)
 35 has sett vs in. The kyng rose vpp and said to Guenelete that

¹ MS. *Vrethen*. W, *vnhappy man*. R, *cellui homme*.

by strenght he shuld neuer haue the loue of hiȝ; and if he wold leve his entreprise, he shuld yeve hym tounes, or castelles, or what thyng he wold haue. And he answerd agane and said, that he wold not take all the reaume, bot that
 5 he wold haue hiȝ, sith that hiȝ (lorde) had yeven hiȝ to hym. Then said the kyng, "Heȝ be bot litle reason. I dovte that ye shall not reiose hiȝ long." All aualed not that the kyng said, for he was more in his cursydnes then he was afore, and said, (not) for to dye, he wold leve his entreprise, what so
 10 euer befell. The kyng asked hym a monethe respete, and at the monethe ende he shuld yeve hym an answeȝ. And Guenelete wold ryght not doo; bot the kyng did so myche that he had iiij days resspete, and aftre the iiij days he shuld wedde hiȝ; and that (she) concented therto.

15 This¹ was the matieȝ sworne and agreed. And yit said Guenelete, that she shuld not departe oute of the touȝ vnto the day come of hys weddyng. He had grete ioye and did bere hiȝ euery day of the best metes that he couth fynd. And then he helde the kyng wele avysed.² Aftre the iiij^{te}
 20 day the feste and the array was grete, and Guenelete floo for ioye to haue so faiȝ a ladye, that he loued so wele. The kyng went and broght hiȝ doune, and she come all for-weped³ and was so heuy that she had leveȝ haue died then lived, and wyssed in hiȝ hert aftre Ponthus and said, allas in evyll tyme
 25 was she borne,—“for a simple chaunge nowe haue I made.” So she was led to the chirche, and the byschop did wed theym. The teres fell often tymes and thyk frome hiȝ eyen.

The mete was ordaned and theȝ was dyuers mynstrelleses, of trumpes, taborettes, and fydelles. Ryght mery was Guenelete, bot I dovhte it was aganes his mysaventure, as it pleased God,—for euery man shal be rewarded aftre his seruice. That day was the fest ryght grete.

¹ W, *And thus*.

² W, *avysed*. The reading appears to be a misunderstanding of R's *bien aise*.

³ W, *bewepte*.

So leue we here of theym and turne agane to Pontus,
howe he come on fro Galice to the mariege of Guenelete and
of Sydone.

[**Cap. XXXII.** How Pontus arrived in Bretan the same
5 day that Guenelete and Sydone was married; and how
he and his fellows went to the feste as dauncers, and he
slewe Guenelete in playne soppere.]

[*Fol. 198^b.] ***P**ONTUS was in the shipp and had taken the see and had
taken his leue at his modre and at his vncl and of
10 all the barounes of his contrey, and had all ordaned as ye
haue herd afore. He did drawe vp the sales and had wynd
at wyll and sailed so long that they arrived in the Ile of Ree
fast by the Rochell. Ther they toke leue of hym, the Pety-
vynes, the Aungevynes, the Manseoues, the Toryngeaus. So
15 Pontus toke his leue of theym and thonked theym myche
and gave theym grete gyftes; and then he toke the see agane,
he and the othre navye of Englonde and of Bretan; and the
wynde fell all calme and Pontus toke twoo litle ballengers
and thre scoore fellows with hym, and began to rowe.
20 Sydone had dremed that hir lorde come; wherfore she had
sent oute oon of hir squyers to the see syde, to see if any
thyng come,—which lepe vpon a coursoure. So he beheld
twoo ballengers and sawe in theym a standard. So he sup-
posed that it was of the armys of Galice; wherfor he toke
25 his hooide and made a signe of callyng. Pontus beheld and
said, “See yondre a rydañ, that makes vs a signe of callyng.
Itt semes vs that he has grete haste, or elles he mokkes vs.
Haste you that we weñ with hym.” And when the squyer
knewe Pontus, he cryed to hym and said, “Ser, haste you,
30 for Godes loue.” “What?” said Pontus, “Be ther any
thyng amys?” Then the squyer told hym howe Guenelete
had serued hym fro poynte to poynte. And then Pontus
blissed hym and was all amervelled, that euer he thoght to
doo suche treasone.

"Nowe," said the squyer, "they wolle anon be at the sopper, so it shal be harde to come in." "I shall telle you," sayd Ponthus, "howe we shall doo: we shall dysgyse vs at yonde vyllege and we shall goo in daunsyng with tybours
 5 and with pypers,¹ and we shall be^r presentes, sayng that we be fellowes that has grete ioye of the mariage; and by that meane we shall come in with the daunses." "In goode faith," said the squyer, "it be wele sayd." And so itt was doon.

And Ponthus dysgysed hym² in the gounes of the goode
 10 men of the subarbes; and then they went daunsyng to the courte. So it was neghe the sonne gooyng doun, and men lete theym entre into the hall, wele dysgysed. Sume had stree hattes and sume of grene bowes and sume had hoodes stuffed with hay, sume were haltyng and sume were croke bakked,—
 15 euery man made aftre his awne gyse. Guenelete made ioye and sayd, "Ye may wele see howe the comon people has grete ioye of our weddyng; ther be fair dysportes that they make vs." Bot he knewe not of the bushement, wherby he was sone angred.

20 When Ponthus and his felleshipp had daunsed twys or thrys aboute the hall and had beholden the hyghe dese, and sawe Guenelete that made grete ioye and grete feste of the daunses and getted³ at the table, Ponthus come thedreward and kast away his disgysyng, so that euery man knewe hym; and then
 25 he said to Guenelete, "Ay thou fals tratou^r and vntrewe, howe durst thou thynke so grete a treson aganes me and the kyng and his doghtre, the whiche has norysshed the and doone the so myche goode? A simple guerdone has thou yelded theym agane therfore. Bot nowe thou sall haue thy payment."
 30 Guenelete behelde hym, the whiche was full ferd and wyst neuer what to answe^r, for he knewe wele that he was bot a deid man. And then Ponthus drewe a litle swerd, ryght

[*Fol. 199.] scharpe, and smote hym, so that he clave the hede * and

¹ W, *with pypes and tabours.*

² W, *Kynge Ponthus and his felowes dysguyssed theym.*

³ W, *wayted.* R, *deuisoit.*

the body to the navyll, and aftre he cutted of his hede, the which was in peces in signe of a tratoure, and made hym to be draun oute and commaunded that he shuld be borne to the gallowes.

- 5 When the kyng and his doghtre sawe Pontus, the[i] lepte from the table and come rynnyng, they^r armys open, and halsed hym and kyssed hym. Sydone weped for ioye and kyssed his mouthe and his eyn and she myght not dysseuer from hym. Bot Pontus had so grete pitee for the dysease
10 that they had soffred, that the teres fell frome his eyn, so sore his hert was. And when they^r herttes we^r sumwhat lyghtened, the kyng said, "Fair son, it has bot litle failed that ye shuld haue lost the syght of you^r wyfe and of me." Then he told hym of the grete treson, of the fals lettres, and of the
15 hungre he made theym to soffre. Pontus blessed hym and was all abashed and sayd¹ that neuer sith Crist [was] borne,¹ was suche a tratour livyng, that thoght so fals a tresoun. "I bethynke me," said he, "of Ihesu Crist that had xij apostelles, of the which oon sold hym. And so we come hidre xiiij²
20 fellowes, as it plessyd to God, wherof oon was wors then Iudas; bot thonked be God, he be wele payd for his reward." "Ay," said the kyng, "and ye had bene lengre absente, ye had bene more moked." "God wold it not," said Pontus.
"Nowe leve we this talkyng," said the kyng, "for the
25 matier be wele fynysshed to my plesur; so lete vs leve of our disporte³ and tell ye vs of you^r dedes,—howe ye haue sped." "Ryght wele, I thonke God," said Pontus. Then he told theym of the batell and of the dyscomfetoure of the Saresyns, and howe the contrey was clensed and wele laboured. And
30 then the^r we^r sum that told all the manere and the revle, howe he was coroned. They had all grete ioye to he^r of the fair adventures that God sent hym. Then they did bryng hym

¹ W, *sayd that neuer erst was borne suche*. R, *car oncques mais ne nasqui si faulx homme*.

² R, *xiiij*. W, *.xiii*.

³ After *disporte*, a superfluous *and tell vs* is cancelled by the rubricator.

doune to sope^r and afre songen and daunced and had ioie in they^r herte. Sydone was merye and glade, and it nedes not to aske, howe that she in hi^r herte thonked God mekely to be escaped frome so grete a *perell*. That nyght they we^r wele
 5 eased, for both thei^r hertes we^r¹ in dystresse. They talked of many thynges and they had enughe of ioy and of dissportes to gedre, for they loved wele to gedre. They loved God and holy chirche and they we^r ryght charitable and piteous of the pouere people.

10 That nyght the sowdeoures of Guenelete fled a way,— whoso myght goo, went. All othre people thonked God of the *commyng* of Ponthus, and they went (on) pylgremege and with processyon, yeldyng *graces* to God, for euery man wenyd that he had ben deid. On the morowe afre arryved the
 15 navye of Englund, of Bretan, and of Normandy. And when they herd the tresoune of Guenelete, they had grete *mervell*, howe that euer he durste thynke suche falshode.

The kyng of Bretan receyved theym with grete ioie; and the kyng Ponthus withheld with hym the Erle of Gloucestre,
 20 and wele a twenty knyghtes, and said that within xv days he wold goo into Englund to see the kyng and the quene and they^r² doghtre Gene^r; and said to the Erle of Richemound, “Recommunde³ me to theym, I *pray* you; and if my lady Gene^r be not wedded, I shall bryng hi^r an husbond, if it
 25 please the kyng and hi^r.” So he tolde hym in his ere that it was his cosyn german Pollides, the which be right a goodely knyght and of goode condicions and likly to come to⁴ grete worshipp. “In goode faithe,” said the Erle, “ye say trouthe; and the kyng wolle be full glade of hym, as I suppose, and
 30 haue hym in * grete chertey, for the love that (he) has to you. So he convehed hym as fa^r as he myght and afre toke his leve of theym. And so they departed and come into they^r awn contrey with grete ioie.

[*Fol. 199^b.]

¹ W, *had ben*.

² MS. *ther'*. W, *her*. R, *leur*.

³ MS. *recommaumde*.

⁴ In the MS. *to follows worshipp*. I follow the order of W.

The Erle of Richemound come into the courte and founde the quene and the kyng of Scotis, that was comen to see theyme. The kyng asked hym of the tithynges. And he told hym, fro the begynnyng to the endyng, of all the adventures: and howe the contrey was deliuered of the Saresyns, and howe the contree and the people had ben saved by the Erle of Desture and *Ser* Patryk, in suche wyse that it was wele laboured and peopled of men by the truage that they yelded, wherby they lived in peace. And then he told hym of the treson of Guenelete, and afre he told theym of the grete yeftes, of the grete gentylnes, and the goode chere that kyng Pontus made theym, and howe gretly he was beloued of all men. And when he hade all tolde, he toke in counsell the kyng, the quene, and theyr doghtre Genev, and the kyng of Scotis, and tolde theym howe Pontus wold come thedre within xv days, and withheld with hym the Erle of Gloucestre, and howe he had spoken to hym of a mariege of his cosyn german and of Genev. The kyng asked what maner knyght he was; and he answerd that he was the goodliest knyght that he knewe, save Pontus,—“and I tell you,” said he, “that he resembled¹ myche to Pontus, of persone and of condiciouns, save he be sumwhat lesse.” “Be my feith,” sayd the kyng, “I accorde me therto, so that it please my doghtre.” And she kneled doune and said, what it pleased hym to commaunde hir, she shuld doo it. The quene and the kyng of Scotis agreed theym to the mariege, and the kyng of Scotis said, “*Ser*, it nedes not to marye your doghtre to a kyng, or to a lorde, that wold not dwell in the reaume; for a kyng, or a grete lorde, peraventure, wold not dwell in this contree, and that weir not goode for the people ne for the contrey; and witt ye wele, that als longe as the kyng Pontus levys ther shall noo man be so hardy, to assayl, or to greve, this lond.” Then said the kyng that he said sothe. Genev, that so myche loved Pontus, said in hir hert, that the knyght pleased hir more then any othere, and she

¹ W, *resembleth*. R, *ressemble*.

enquered of hym full farre¹ of the Erle and of the knyghtes, that had ben at the werre and had seen hym; and the more that she enquires, the better she fyndes and the more she loves hym. Now has she noo desire so grete as to see hym
 5 and she prayd to God that he myght come soon. So leve we to speke of theym and turne agane to the kyng Ponthus.

[**Cap. XXXIII.** How kyng Ponthus made a grete feste at Vennys for to feste the straungers, wher as he wonne the prys aboue all othre.]

10 **P**onthus turned agane to Vennys,² when he had convehed the lordes of Englund and of the contrees beyonde. So they went to here messe and afre went to theyr mete; and then said kyng Ponthus to the barounes of Bretan, "Fair Lordes, if it please you, me must see the ladies of this con-
 15 trey, for I wolfe feste theym for the love of the Duke of Gloucestre and thes knyghtes of Englund, the whiche muste be fested, and to dyssporte theym with sume dedes of armes; for within xv days we must goo into Englund to see the kyng, for certan matiers that I have to speke with hym."
 20 They answerd that it shuld be doon. "Nowe," said he, "I charge ichon of you, that ye bryng the fairest ladyes and gentyllwommen of your contrees, and iche of you shall bryng his wyfe, and ye shall be here all by this day sevennyght."

So this was graunted, and euery man went home to his wif
 25 and to their frendes and eueryche of theym soghte for the
 [*Fol. 200.] fairest ladys and * gentylwommen, and the beste synghyng and daunsyng, that they couthe fynde, and come to Vennys. And the kyng Ponthus went aganes theym and resceyved theym with grete ioye of mynstrellcie and of othre disportes.
 30 On the morowe afre wer the iustes grete. Sydone was in a scaffold, and the kyng hi fadre, and the grete ladies of Bretan and the aged knyghtes. Ponthus was of the inner

¹ W, *frome ferre*.

² MS. *Vennys and*.

partie, and the Duke of Gloucestre, Barnard de La Roche, Gerrard de Vetry, Pers de Vetry, Roger de Loges, the Vicounte de Dounges, and Endrus de Doule,—for to iuste aganes all comoners.¹ So the iustes began grete and harde.

5 Pontiſ beth doune knyghtes and horsſes, ſo that euery man dovbted to mete with hym. The ladies prased hym myche and ſo did all othre men. Grete was the feſte, the iuſtes, and the diſſportes, and laſted to the ſonne goyng doune. Theſe weſe many faire iuſtes and harde ſtrokes, that longe weſe to tell.

10 At evyn they went to theſe ſouper and weſe ſerued with many dyuers ſeruices; and mynſtelles and herowdes made grete myrth and grete noyſe. The prys of the uttre ſyde was yeven to the Lorde Mounteford, for ryght wele and ſore he had iuſted. So he had the cupp of gold. And Pontiſ had

15 the prys within and he had a chapelete, that the ladyſ ſent hym.

And then with (that) come Geffray de Lazygne, Andrewe de La Toure, Guylyam de Roches, and Leonell de Mauleon, the which Pontiſ had ſent for, to goo with hym into Eng-

20 lond, for ouer all knyghtes he loued theym beſte for theſe grete worthenes. And the kyng Pontiſ roſſe a gane theym and toke theym in his armes and made theym grete chere. And they ſaid vnto hym that he dide wrong to ryſſe aganes theym and that he was to curteſe and to gentyll. Afre ſouper the

25 Lorde de Lazigne ſaid, “Ye haue this day iuſted withoute vs, and if it pleaſe you,” ſaid he to Pontiſ, “we iiij that be laſt comen ſhall iuſte to morowe.” Then ſaid Pontiſ, “Ye ſhall haue with you my coſyn Pollides and the Vicounte de Lyon, for to be vj; for I vnderſtonde this day by the Vicounte

30 wordes, that he was wrothe by cauſe that he was not of the inner partie,—for we ſhall nowe at this tyme eaſe his hert.” Then he was called, and Pollides told theym that to morowe they vj ſhuld iuſt aganes all comoners.

So the cry was made that the white fellowes ſhuld delyuer

35 all maner of knyghtes; and he that withoute ſhuld haue the

¹ W, comers. R, venans.

pris, he shall haue a gyrdle and a gybser of the fairest lady of the feste; and he that within shuld haue the prys, shuld kysse the fairest ladye and of hiȝr shuld haue a rynge of gold. So theȝ weȝ grete iustes and mony grete strokes gyven; bot
 5 who so euer iusted wele, or noo, I lete it passe forto abyge thys storye. And neuȝr the lesse, the pris withoute was yeven to Geffray de Chateawbreaunce, and the price within, to Pollides; bot sum said that Geffray de Lazygne had wonne it, so theȝ was therefore a grete debate.

- 10 [Cap. XXXIV.]¹ Her followes of the mariege of Pollides and of [the] kynges doghtre of Englund.¹

On the morowe aftre Ponthus toke his leve of the kyng and of Sydone and of the ladys of Bretan, and toke the see and led with hym xij of the barounes of Bretan and the
 15 iiij knyghtes before said. So they passed ouȝr; for the Erle of Gloucestre parted before theym a day iourney, for to tell the kyng of Englund that the kyng Ponthus come for to see hym.

The kyng vndrestode wele by the Erle of Rychemond that
 20 he come; so he was garnysshed and stuffed of all thynges [*Fol. 200^b.] that hym neded forto receyve hym * worshipfully. With hym was the kyng of Scottes, his brothre, and the kyng of Ire-londe and the kyng of Cornewayle, his neviewe, and the erles and the barounes of his reaume. So they had grete ioie of
 25 his comyng. The kyng prayd theym all to doo hym all the worschypp and chere that myght be doon,—“for,” said he, “ye wote wele howe by hym this reaume was releved both of negheboures and Saresyns.” They said all that they shuld doo theyȝ power. The kyng lepte on hors bak and thos
 30 othre knyghtes and rode agane kyng Ponthus wele a myle, with all maner of mynstrelley. They receyved hym with

¹ Since this sentence of the text is quite in the form of a chapter heading, I have used it as such.

grete ioye and worshipp. The cheſ that they made hym be not to tell of, for itt was ryght grete.

The kyng Pontus was right rychely arrayd with perles and precious stones, and he had vpon his hede a cercele of
 5 stones and of perles. They weſ twenty knyghtes with Pollides, and the vj¹ that I spake of afore and iiij hundreth of Galyce. Thes twenty knyghte[s] weſ cled in singulatonnes furred with² wyld ware all in oon suyte. They weſ wele and richely arrayd of gyrdells of gold and of gyspers, faiſ and
 10 ryche, the which apered vndre theiſ ryche mantylls. They weſ myche loked vpon, and theiſ ordenaunce was holden riche, both faiſ and goode. With grete ioye intred the kyng Pontus into London and theſ he founde the quene and hiſ doghtre and hiſ ladyes in the courte abydyng hym.

15 So when he sawe the quene, he lyght a farrow and went rynnnyng toward hiſ, and she kyssed hym and halsed hym, and he was receyved with grete ioye and worship. The quene asked hym howe he had doon sith he departed from thens; and he said, "Ryght wele." Geneuer the kynges doghtre had
 20 alwey hiſ eye to see Pollides, the which she had grete desire for to see. So she knewe hym by the tokens and the liknes of his cosyn Pontus, and she se hym so gracios and so plesaunt that she liked hym aboue all othre. And yit, to be in more certan, she asked the Erle of Gloucestre of hym; and
 25 he shewed by a signe whiche was he. Then she said in hiſ hert, that she had not faled to chese hym and that hiſ hertt told hiſ wele that it was he. They went to mete, and theſ weſ mony straunge seruices and notablyly serued; for the barounes serued by the kynges commaundement. Afre mete
 30 they ete and dranke and toke spices. And Geneuer had grete desire that they shuld speke of hiſ matieſ; so she said to hiſ vncle the kyng of Scottes, laghyng, "I wote not what shall be of the speche that the Erle of Richemound broght." And the kyng smyled and said, "Ye haue seen hym. What say

¹ W and R have the correct reading, .xvi.

² W, with *veer*, following R.

ye by hym? Plesys itt you of hym?" She waxe rede. "I shall doo as my Lorde my fadre and ye wolle." So he sawe wele that she liked hym and come to the kyng and said vnto hym, it was goode to wytt of the matie^r of his nece.

- 5 Then said the kyng of Englonde, "Ye say trouthe. Withdrawe you into yonde chaumbre." And the kyng withdrew hym, and sent for the kyng of Irlond and for the kyng of Cornewale and for the lordes and barounes of his reaume. And when they we^r comen, he tolde theym howe the Erle of Rychmond had spoken vnto hym fro the kyng Ponthus of the mariege of his doghtre and of Pollides; and he said vnto them, "Fai^r Lordes, ye knowe wele that I be aged, so it behoues that ou^r doghtre be married to a man that we^r likly to kepe you in reste and in peace. If ye take a grete lorde, a
- 10 kyng, or a prince, *peraventu^r* he wolle make his dwellyng in [*Fol. 201.] his awn contrey, and so * shuld ye be withouten gouernou^r; and if any wrong be doon to any of you, or to this reame, or to any of ou^r pouere¹ comones, they shuld be fane to goo oute of the contrey to seke ryght of his request. Therefore,
- 20 as me semes, it we^r bettre to haue a yonge knyght of high kynrede, that wolle abide and dwell with you, and that wold thynk hymself to (be) beholden to haue worsshipp by hys wyfe; and in so myche he shuld be the more enclined to obey you and the reaume. So I wolle tell you all the matie^r that
- 25 has ben spoken vnto me." Then he declared theym howe the kyng Ponthus had spoken to the Erle of Richemound of his doghtre and of Pollides, the whiche men holden for a goode knyght and wele condicioned. So the^r was myche talkyng both of oon and of othre, that longe were to tell; bot the ende
- 30 was that all was accorded, and said, that they myght noo bettre doo for the welfare of the reaume and forto be obeyd and oute of trouble, and that as long as his cosyn Ponthus levys, the^r shuld noo man be soo hardy to meve any werre aganes theym.

¹After *pouere*, *me* cancelled.

And when the kyng sawe that they concented, he said to the kyng of Scottes and to the Erle of Richmound, the which were worshipfull knyghtes, "Goo ye," said he, "to the kyng Pontus and doo hym to wytt of all thes maters and say
 5 hym that for his love we wolles haue his cosyn." Thes two departed and called the kyng Pontus aside and tolde hym ryght graciously howe the kyng and his lordes wer concented for the love¹ and worshipp of hym vnto the mariege that he had spoken of to the Erle of Richemound. Pontus thonked
 10 the kyng and the barounes full mekely and said that they did hym myche worship, for the which God *graunte* hym *grace* forto deserve it. And so long went and come the kyng of Scottes to he assembled theym in the kynges² chaumbre and ther come the Archbysshop of Caunterbury, the whych fynced
 15 theym.

It be not to aske if Geneuer had ryght grete ioye in hir hert, all thoghe she made ther bot simple chere outward. Sche loued hym and praysed hym myche the more for his gudelenes and the gude name that men gave hym and also
 20 for the love of his cosyn Pontus, the which she loued myche afor tyme. And also Pollides thonked God devoutly in his hert for the grete worship that he had sent hym in this world, and to haue so fair a lady and of so goodely behavyng. So the day of the weddyng was sett the viijth day aftre. Grete
 25 was the feste and grete wer the iustes, the which begane the morowe aftre the day of the mariege; for the kyng Pontus said that he wold not accorde that ther shuld be any dedes of armes doon the day of the mariege, and that he said was by cause the kyng of Burgon deid the day of his mariege. For to
 30 say of all the goode iustes³ it wer to long to tell, bot ouer all Pontus iusted wele, for he was withoute⁴ any pitee or⁴ pere. Right wele iusted Pollides and the kyng of Irlond, the Lorde de Lasigne, the Lorde de La Toure, the Lorde Maunford of

¹After *love*, a superfluous *and worship* stands cancelled.

²R, c. *du roy*. W, *quenes*.

³W, *well iusters*.

⁴W omits.

Bretan—thes had all the voice of the wele iusters. It were long to tell all, so I lete it passe lyghtly; for it were a grete thyng to tell of the grete feste, of the ordenaunce, and of the seruices, and of the price that was yeven, and of all the dys-
 5 sportes. The feste endured fro the monday vnto the fryday.

Aftre mete the kyng Ponthus toke his leve of the kyng and of the quene, bot with grete payne they gave hym leve. Geneuer convehed hym wele two myle, and they had myche
 [*Fol. 201^b.] goode talkyng to gedre, and she said vnto hym howe * she
 10 loved hiȝ lorde Pollides myche the more, by cause that she had loved hym covertly before, and that she prased hym the more, by cause that he had keped truly his furst love. Ponthus smyled and said that theȝ was noo wyle bot that wommen knewe and thoght. So they spake enughe of dyuers thynges;
 15 and then he made hiȝ to turne agane, with grete payne, and said vnto hiȝ, "My lady and my love, I be youȝ knyght and shall be as long as I live; so ye commaunde me what it plesse you, and I shall fulfyll it at my power." And then he said befor Pollides, "My faiȝ lady and my love, I wolle
 20 that my cosyn here love you and obey you, and that he haue noo plesaunce¹ to noon so myche as to you. And if theȝ be any favte, doo me to wytt and I shall correcte hym." "Ser" said she, "he shall doo as a goode man owe to doo." "God graunt it," said he. So he toke his leve and departed.

25 Then the kyng of Scottes, the kyng of Irlond, and the kyng of Cornewale wold haue convehed theym,—that is to say, Ponthus and his felisship, vnto the porte, bot Ponthus wold not soffre theym. Bot theȝ was hevynes and curtesie at theyȝ departyng. And aftre they toke theyȝ leve at hym and turned
 30 agane to the kynges hoves. And the kyng Ponthus come to the porte and called to hym his cosyn Pollydes aside and said vnto hym, "Thonked be God, ye owe grete guerdon vnto God, for ye be in the way to by ryght a grete kyng and myghty of armys and of haviȝ and of notablenes, and grete
 35 lordes youȝ subiectes; so ye owe to thonke God highly, and

¹ ms. plesaunt. W, *pleasaunce*.

therfor it behoves you to have foure¹ thynges, if ye wolle reiose all in peace and to live peacyble:—

“The furst, it behoves that ye be a verray true man,—that is to wyte, love God ouer all thyng, with all you^r hert, and
 5 drede to disobey hym; if ye love hym, ye shall faire the bettre and he shall helpe you and sustene you in all you^r nedes. Love and worship holy chirche and all the *commaundementes* therof truly kepe. This be the furst *seruice* that men shuld yeld to Allmyghty God.

10 “The secunde be, that ye shuld bere worshipp and *seruice* to theym that ye be comen of, and to theym of whome ye haue and may haue worship and riches,—that is to say, love to *serue* you^r fadre and you^r wyfe, wherof myche worship shall befall you. Be to hym a verray ryght sonne; kepe you that
 15 ye angre theym not; soffre and endure what language and wordes that shal be said vnto you, or of whate tales shall be reported vnto you,—sum to please you and some to flater you, or elles for malice coverte of suche men as wold not the peace between you and theym; for fai^r cosyn, he that wolle soffre
 20 of his bettre and of his grette, he ouercomes hym. It is a grete grace of God and of the worlde, a man² toward hym self² to haue sofferaunce, for dyuers resones, the which shuld be long to tell.

“The third resone is forto be meke and amyable, large
 25 and free, afre you^r powe^r, to youre³ barounes and to you^r knyghtes and squyers, of whome ye shall haue nede; and if ye may not shewe theym largesse and fredome of you^r goodes, at the lest, be to theym curtes and debonere, both to the grete and to the litle. The grete shall love, the litle shall prase
 30 you ouer all of you^r goode che^r; and so⁴ it shal gretly auale

¹ W's reading. MS. *thre*. Pontius' homily is actually divided under four heads.

² W omits *a man* and has *towarde hymselfe* immediately following *worlde* and modifying *grace*—probably the true reading.

³ The *e* of *your*e shows a tag apparently for a second, unfinished *e*.

⁴ W, *so he shall awayll you a ryght heralde*. R, *Et vous vaudra ung droit herault*.

- you,—so myche ye shall be prased ouer all. And also it is to vndrestonde that ye shuld be curtes and gentle vnto your wyf afor any othre, for dyuers resons; for by worshipp and by curtesie¹ beryng vnto hir, ye shall hold the love of hir
- 5 bonde vnto you; and forto be dyuers and roode vnto hir, she
 [*Fol. 202.] myght happenly chaunge, and the love * of hir, so shuld ye wors reioys; and peraventure she then myght gyve it to an othre, wheṛ as she myght take suche plesaunce,² wherof ye myght be right sorye,—and that ye shuld not withdrawe it
- 10 when ye wold. And so theṛ be grete perell and grete maistre³ to kepe the love of mariege. And also be waṛ that ye kepe selvyn true vnto hir, for it be said in Gospell that ye shuld chaunge hir for noon othre. And if ye doo thus as I say, God shall encrease you in all goode welthe and worship. If ye see
- 15 hir angree, apese hir by fairnes, and when she comes agane to hir selfe, she shall loue you myche the more; for theṛ be noo curtesie doon to a good hert bot that it is yolden agane; and when an hert be fell and angre and men wrath it more, it imagyns thynges wherof mony harmes may fall.
- 20 “The fourte reson be, that ye shuld be petuous of the pouere, the which that shall require right of the ryche, or of the myghty, that wold greve theym; for therto be ye sett and ordaned—and all othre that has grete lordeshipes,—for ye come into the worlde as pouere as they dide, and as pouere
- 25 shall ye be at the day of your dethe; and ye shall haue noo more of the erthe, save oonly your lenghte, as the pouere shall have, and ye shall be lefte in the erthe allone, as the pouere shall be. And theṛ (fore) shall ye haue noo lordeship, bot forto holde ryghtwysnes, withoute blemysyng, or doute of any grete
- 30 maistre,⁴ or repreve, nethir letyng for the love ne for the hate, for thus commaundes God. Euery friday in esspeciall heṛ the clamour of the pouer people, of wommen and of wydoys. Putt not theiṛ right in resspete ne in dilacion, ne beleve not allway

¹ W, *courteys*.² MS. *plesaunt*.³ W, *maystry*.⁴ MS. *maistrie*. W, *mayster*.

youſ officers of euery thyng that they ſhall tell you ; enqueſ
befor the truthe, for ſum of theym wolde doo it to purchese
damege to the pouere, for hate, and ſume for covetyſe, to
haue theiſ goodes, when they ſee that they may not doo ſo
5 with theym as they wold. So, if they come with fals reporte,
it is a perilous thyng for a grete lorde to be lyght of beleve."

He taght and¹ ſhewed mony goode enſamples. And Pol-
lides thonked hym and ſaid vnto hym, "Ser, I knowe wele
ye loue, and of youſ goodnes ye haue purchesed, me the wor-
10 ſhip and the welfare that I haue ; therfor I pray you, by the
way of charitee, that we may euery yere mete and comon² to
gedre ; for that ſhall be my comforth, all my ſuſtenaunce and
ioye." "I graunte therto," ſaid Pontius. And aftre, when
they had ſpoken and talked of mony thynges, they toke theyſ
15 leue echon of othre and halsed and kyſſed to gedre ; and
navthre of theym had powaſ to ſpeke oon worde, for mervel-
louſly they loved to gedre.

When the kyng Pontius had his hert ſumwhat clered,³
that he myght ſpeke, he toke his leue of the lordes of Eng-
20 lond and offred hym ſelf myche vnto theym. And Pollides
turned agane vnto the kynges hous, wheſ as men made hym
right grete ioye.

Pollides helde wele the goode doctrine of his cosyn Pontius,
for he ſerued and obeyd the kyng and the quene, and made
25 hym ſelfe to be loved both of the ryche and of the pouere by
his larges and curteſie. Ryght wele he loued God and holy
chirche and was pituous and charitable vnto the pouere people.
The kyng and the quene loued hym as theiſ awn childe, and
aboute vij yeres aftre, the kyng died ; and then was Pollides
30 crowned kyng peaseablely, and ryght goode (loue) was between
hym and his wyf and the olde quene, and ſo he reigned in
peace and in goode ryste.

So leue we heſ of hym and turne agane to Pontius.

¹After *and*, *swe* cancelled.

³R, *le cuer luy esclaircist*.

²W, *se vs*.

[**Cap. XXXV.** How kyng Ponthus returned to Bretan and gouerned the realme wysely vnto his dethe.]

[*Fol. 202^b.] ***K**¹ying Ponthus saled so long on the see, he and his barounes, that they come and loded in Bretan and
 5 then they went to the kynges hous, whe^r as they we^r receyved with grete ioye of all maner of people. And when they had sodiourned wele vij days, Geffray de Lasigne and Andrewe de La Toure and the straungers toke their leve and departed. Ponthus gave theym mony grete gyftes and riche presentes
 10 and thonked theym and witheld theym as his fellowes and his frendes, and then he convehed theym a liege,² whethre they wold or not. Then they toke leve echon of othre.

The kyng of Bretan lived aboute space of thre yeres afre, for he was ryght wele aged; and so was Ponthus kyng and
 15 was ryght wele beloued of the astates and of all maner of people. He was right goode and rightwys of iustice, charitable and petuouse of the pouere. Ryght wele they loued to gedre, he and the quene his wyfe, and led a ryght goode, holy live and did mony almus dedys. And when the houshold
 20 shuld remeve from oon place to an othre he did crye that all they that he owed any goode vnto, we^r itt for his houshold, or for any othre thyng that we^r taken for hym, that they shuld come to hym or to his officers, and all he did pay for, that was taken of any man;³ for he said that all that witheld
 25 any goodes or det frome the pouere shuld haue litle merite therof. He vsed and led right a goode, holy live.

And so then the[i] went and wonned a ye^r in Galice, whe^r as they we^r right wele beloued, dred, dovbted, and worshipped. The Erle of Destrue thonked myche the kyng his newiewe of
 30 the worshipp that he had doon his sonne. The kyng Ponthus gave grete heritage and londes to Ser Patryke, which had saved hym in the shipp and had doon so myche goode to the

¹ This K extends through four ll. of the ms.

² a two myle.

³ W inserts, *for he sayd that they were foles that abyde to theyr heyres or to theyr executors/for fewe were contented*—following R literally.

contrey. Right grete reuerence bare the quene Sydone vnto the olde quene hiȝ lordes modre. The kyng sent for his vnclē the kyng of Aragon and for the lordes and barounes of the contrey aboute, and made grete iustes that dured wele x days.
 5 And aftre the quene and the houshold went on pilgremege to Sainte Iames in Galice.

And aftre his turnyng agane, he dwelled not long bot that he went to the weres in Spayne aganes the Saresyns. And he led with hym the barounes of Bretan, of Anyoye, of Mayne,
 10 of Petowe, of Turreyn, of Normandie. Of the Normandes, he led the Erle of Morteyn, the Vicounte of Avrences, Tesson, Panell, and many othre knyghtes; of Mayne, Hungres de Beamounde and Guy de Laball¹ and dyuers othre; of Anyoye, Piers de Doune, Andrewe de La Toure, Guyllen de Roches,
 15 the Lorde of Marmonte,² John de Petowe, the Lorde de La-signne, Guy de Towars, Leonell de Malleon, Hungres de Par-teney; of Turreyn, Hubberd de Malle, Hondes de Bausy, Patryk d'Amvoys;³ and many of theym of Bretan and of Gascoigne. They weȝ wele xv^m, and discomfeted the hethen
 20 people, and ther they did mony grete dedes of armes and toke mony grete tounes and castelles; and then vpon the wynter euery man turned home agane into his awn contrey. And all gave grete love and prasyng⁴ to Pontius, for he payd theym wele the[i]ȝ wages and gave theym grete gyftes,—in so myche
 25 that they said, ther was no right cheften bot he, and that he
 [*Fol. 203.] was likly to conquer all maner of contrees * be his knyghthode, larges, and curtesie,—“for all goode condicions be in his per-sone, aftre the revle of God and of the world, and in hym be all goodelynes, so that it be mervell of hym before all othre,—
 30 he owe grete guerdon vnto God.”

He dwelled a while in Galice, and aftre he come agane to Bretan, and then he went and sawe his cosyn Pollides, the which was cronēd kyng of Englonde, wheȝ he was receyved

¹ W, *la vale*. R, *laual*.

² W, *Nermount*.

³ MS. *Damvoys*. W, *damboise*.

⁴ W, *loos and pryce*.

with grete ioye. It be not to aske if the quene Geneuer sett a grete payne forto feste hym and make hym grete chere.

And afre that went the kyng of Englonde into Gascoigne and into Galice to see his fadre and his kynesmen and he gave
5 theym grete gyftes. And then he turned agane into Bretan, where as he was myche made of and had grete chere. And afre he went home agane into his awn reame.

The kyng Ponthus and the quene leved long enughe and reigned to the pleser of God and then they discesed and
10 finisshed to the grete sorowe and hevynes to theyr people.

Bot thus it is of this worldly live; for ther be noon so fair, ne so ryche, so strong, ne so goode, bot at the last he must nedes leve this worlde. *Explicit.*¹

¹After the last l. of the romance are four ll. blank. The rest of f. 203 has been cut out.